Canon

TS6500 series TS6500i series TS5500 series

Online Manual

English

Contents

Appendix. 8

Symbols Used in This Document. 9

Trademarks. 10

Licenses. 11

Main Components and Their Use. 38

Main Components. 39

Front View. 40

Rear View. 42

Inside View. 43

Operation Panel. 44

LCD and Operation Panel. 46

Entering Numbers, Letters, and Symbols. 48

Power Supply. 49

Turning the Printer On and Off. 50

Loading Paper. 53

Loading Plain Paper. 54

Loading Photo Paper. 59

Loading Envelopes. 63

Loading Originals. 68

Loading Originals on Platen. 69

Loading Based on Use. 71

Supported Originals. 74

How to Detach / Attach the Document Cover. 75

Replacing a FINE Cartridge. 77

Replacing a FINE Cartridge. 78

Checking Ink Status on the LCD. 82

Performing Maintenance Functions from the Printer. 83

Maintenance Procedure. 84

Printing the Nozzle Check Pattern. 87

Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern. 88

Cleaning the Print Head. 90

Deep Print Head Cleaning. 91
Aligning the Print Head. 93
Aligning the Print Head Manually. 95
Performing Maintenance Functions from Your Computer (Windows). 98
Opening the Maintenance Tool (Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool). 99
Cleaning the Print Heads. 101
Adjusting Print Head Position Automatically. 103
Adjusting Print Head Position Manually. 104
Performing Maintenance Functions from Your Computer (macOS). 107
Opening Remote UI for Maintenance. 108
Cleaning the Print Heads. 109
Adjusting Print Head Position. 111
Checking Ink Status from Your Computer. 112
Cleaning. 113
Cleaning Paper Feed Rollers. 114
Cleaning Inside the Printer (Bottom Plate Cleaning). 115
Changing Settings. 118
Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer (Windows). 119
Changing the Print Options. 120
Setting the Ink to be Used. 121
Managing the Printer Power. 122
Changing the Printer Operation Mode. 124
Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer (macOS). 126
Managing the Printer Power. 127
Changing the Printer Operation Mode. 128
Changing Settings from Operation Panel. 129
Paper Settings. 130
Changing Settings from Operation Panel. 132
Setting Items on Operation Panel. 133
Security settings. 134
Print settings. 135
Power Control settings. 137
LAN settings. 138
Other device settings. 143

Language selection. . . . 144
Firmware update. . . . 145
Reset settings. . . . 146
Feed settings. . . . 147
Web service setup. . . . 148
ECO settings. . . . 149
Quiet setting. . . . 151
System information. . . . 152
Checking the Total Number of Uses of Printer. . . . 153

Basic Information. . . . 154

Safety. . . . 155

Safety Precautions. . . . 156
Regulatory Information. . . . 159
WEEE. . . . 161

Handling Precautions. . . . 172

Legal Restrictions on Scanning/Copying. . . . 173
Transporting Your Printer. . . . 174
When Repairing, Lending, or Disposing of the Printer. . . . 177
Keeping Print Quality High. . . . 178
Ink Tips. . . . 179

Specifications. . . . 180

Product Specifications. . . . 181
Supported Paper Sizes and Weights. . . . 184
Paper Load Limit. . . . 185

Supported Media Types. . . . 187

Unsupported Media Types. . . . 189
Handling Paper. . . . 190

Printing. . . . 191

Printing Photos and Documents. . . . 192

Printing from Computer. . . . 193

Printing from Application Software (Windows Printer Driver). . . . 194

Basic Printing Setup. . . . 195
Main Controls (Basic Settings Tab). . . . 197

Basic Settings Tab Description. . . . 198
Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Media Type). . . . 206
Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Paper Size). . . . 208
Printing on Postcards. . . . 209
Setting Up Envelope Printing. . . . 210
Registering a Frequently Used Printing Profile. . . . 211
Set Media Type, Quality, etc. (Media/Quality Tab). . . . 213
Media/Quality Tab Description. . . . 214
Set the Layout of Printed Documents (Page Setup Tab). . . . 218
Page Setup Tab Description. . . . 219
Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order. . . . 230
Perform Borderless Printing. . . . 232
Page Layout Printing. . . . 234
Duplex Printing. . . . 235
Maintenance Tab Description. . . . 237
Overview of the Printer Driver. . . . 240
Canon IJ Printer Driver. . . . 241
Opening Printer Driver's Setup Screen. . . . 242
Canon IJ Status Monitor. . . . 243
Checking Ink Status from Your Computer. . . . 244
Instructions for Use (Printer Driver). . . . 245
Canon IJ Status Monitor Description. . . . 247
Updating the Driver. . . . 250
Printing from Application Software (macOS AirPrint). . . . 252
Printing. . . . 253
Perform Borderless Printing. . . . 256
Printing on Postcards. . . . 258
Adding Printer. . . . 259
How to Open Printer Settings Screen. . . . 260
Displaying the Printing Status Screen. . . . 261
Deleting the Undesired Print Job. . . . 262
Removing Printer That Is No Longer Required from List of Printers. . . . 263
Copying. . . . 264
Making Copies. . . . 265

Setting Items for Copying. 267
Scanning. 269
Scanning and Saving to a Computer. 270
Attaching Scanned Images to E-MAIL to Send. 271
Frequently Asked Questions. 272
Network FAQ. 275
Network Communication Problems. 277
Cannot Find Printer on Network (Windows/macOS). 278
Cannot Find Printer on Network. 279
Wireless Router Problems. 283
Network Key (Password) Unknown. 284
Printer Cannot Be Used After Replacing Wireless Router or Changed Router Settings. 286
Printer Settings/Smartphone/Tablet Troubles for Network. 288
Solve Network Troubles with The Printer's Diagnostic Functions. 289
Checking Network Information of Printer. 296
Printing Network Settings. 299
Restoring Printer's LAN Settings to Defaults. 304
Default Network Settings. 305
Connecting with Wireless Direct. 307
Cannot Print (Scan) from Smartphone/Tablet. 312
Message Is Displayed. 316
Printing Problems. 319
Printer Does Not Print. 320
Printer Does Not Pick Up or Feed the Paper/"No Paper" Error. 323
Resolving Print Quality Problems. 325
Ink Does Not Come Out/Blurry or Fuzzy/Inaccurate or Bleeding Colors/Streaks. 328
Lines Are Misaligned/Distorted. 332
Printed Surface Is Smudged/Scratched/Ink Blots/Paper Curl/Paper Is Smudged During Automatic 2-sided Printing. 333
Lines Incomplete or Missing (Windows). 337
Back of Paper Is Smudged. 338
Uneven or Streaked Colors. 339
Change to Offline (Windows)/Cannot Communicate (Windows)/Cannot Print (Windows). 340

Mechanical Problems. 343
Printer Does Not Turn On. 344
Printer Turns Off Unexpectedly or Repeatedly. 345
USB Connection Problems. 346
Wrong Language Appears in Operation Panel. 348
Installation and Download Problems. 349
Failed to MP Drivers (Printer Driver) Installation (Windows). 350
Cannot Proceed Beyond Printer Connection Screen (Cannot Find Printer Connected via USB). 352
Updating MP Drivers (Printer Driver) in Network Environment (Windows). 354
When Error Occurred. 355
List of Support Codes for Printer Errors. 357
What to Do When Paper Is Jammed. 359
Removing Jammed Paper inside Printer. 361
Removing Jammed Paper from Rear Side. 365
1003. 370
1200. 371
1401. 372
1430. 373
1485. 374
1650. 375
1682. 376
1686. 377
1687. 378
1688. 379
1700. 380
Cassette Is Not Installed (1876). 381
2110. 382
4103. 384
5100. 385
5200. 386
5B00. 387
6000. 388

Appendix

- **Online Manual**
- **Symbols Used in This Document**
- **Trademarks**
- **Licenses**

Symbols Used in This Document

Warning

Instructions that, if ignored, could result in death, serious personal injury, or property damage caused by incorrect operation of the equipment. These must be observed for safe operation.

Caution

Instructions that, if ignored, could result in personal injury or property damage caused by incorrect operation of the equipment. These must be observed for safe operation.

Important

Instructions including important information that must be observed to avoid damage and injury or improper use of the product. Be sure to read these instructions.

Note

Instructions including notes for operation and additional explanations.

Basics

Instructions explaining basic operations of your product.

Note

- Icons may vary depending on your product.

Trademarks

- Microsoft, Excel, Internet Explorer, Microsoft Edge, Microsoft Store, OneDrive, PowerPoint, Windows and Windows Vista are trademarks of the Microsoft group of companies.
- Mac, Mac OS, macOS, OS X, AirPort, App Store, AirPrint, the AirPrint logo, Safari, Bonjour, iPad, iPad Air, iPad mini, iPadOS, iPhone and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries and regions.
- The Mopria® word mark and the Mopria® Logo are registered and/or unregistered trademarks of Mopria Alliance, Inc. in the United States and other countries. Unauthorized use is strictly prohibited.
- IOS is a trademark or registered trademark of Cisco in the U.S. and other countries and is used under license.
- Google, Chromebook, Android, Chrome OS, Google Chrome, Google Analytics, Google Apps, Google Docs, Google Drive, Google Home, Google Play, Google Play Logo and YouTube are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Google LLC.
- Adobe, Acrobat, Adobe RGB, Adobe RGB (1998) , Flash, Illustrator, Lightroom, Photoshop and Photoshop Elements are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe in the United States and/or other countries.
- USB Type-C™ is a trademark of USB Implementers Forum.
- Amazon, Echo and Alexa are trademarks of Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates.
- LINE is a registered trademark or trademark of LY Corporation.
- AOSS™ is a trademark of BUFFALO INC.
- Autodesk and AutoCAD are registered trademarks or trademarks of Autodesk, Inc., and/or its subsidiaries and/or affiliates in the USA and/or other countries.
- QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED in Japan and in other countries.
- HP-GL and HP-GL/2 are either registered trademarks or trademarks of HP Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.
- Mozilla Firefox is a trademark or registered trademark of Mozilla Foundation in the U.S. and/or other countries.
- Wi-Fi, WPA, WPA2 and WPA3 are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance.
- All other company names and products mentioned in this guide may be registered trademarks or trademarks of their respective companies.

Licenses

Copyright (c) 2003-2015 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of Apple Inc. ("Apple") nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY APPLE AND ITS CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL APPLE OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Apache License

Version 2.0, January 2004

http://www.apache.org/licenses/
TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR USE, REPRODUCTION, AND DISTRIBUTION

1. Definitions.

   "License" shall mean the terms and conditions for use, reproduction, and distribution as defined by Sections 1 through 9 of this document.

   "Licensor" shall mean the copyright owner or entity authorized by the copyright owner that is granting the License.

   "Legal Entity" shall mean the union of the acting entity and all other entities that control, are controlled by, or are under common control with that entity. For the purposes of this definition, "control" means (i) the power, direct or indirect, to cause the direction or management of such entity, whether by contract or otherwise, or (ii) ownership of fifty percent (50%) or more of the outstanding shares, or (iii) beneficial ownership of such entity.

   "You" (or "Your") shall mean an individual or Legal Entity exercising permissions granted by this License.

   "Source" form shall mean the preferred form for making modifications, including but not limited to software source code, documentation source, and configuration files.

"Object" form shall mean any form resulting from mechanical transformation or translation of a Source form, including but not limited to compiled object code, generated documentation, and conversions to other media types.

"Work" shall mean the work of authorship, whether in Source or Object form, made available under the License, as indicated by a copyright notice that is included in or attached to the work (an example is provided in the Appendix below).

"Derivative Works" shall mean any work, whether in Source or Object form, that is based on (or derived from) the Work and for which the editorial revisions, annotations, elaborations, or other modifications represent, as a whole, an original work of authorship. For the purposes of this License, Derivative Works shall not include works that remain separable from, or merely link (or bind by name) to the interfaces of, the Work and Derivative Works thereof.

"Contribution" shall mean any work of authorship, including the original version of the Work and any modifications or additions to that Work or Derivative Works thereof, that is intentionally submitted to Licensor for inclusion in the Work by the copyright owner or by an individual or Legal Entity authorized to submit on behalf of the copyright owner. For the purposes of this definition, "submitted" means any form of electronic, verbal, or written communication sent to the Licensor or its representatives, including but not limited to communication on electronic mailing lists, source code control systems, and issue tracking systems that are managed by, or on behalf of, the Licensor for the purpose of discussing and improving the Work, but excluding communication that is conspicuously marked or otherwise designated in writing by the copyright owner as "Not a Contribution."

"Contributor" shall mean Licensor and any individual or Legal Entity on behalf of whom a Contribution has been received by Licensor and subsequently incorporated within the Work.

2. Grant of Copyright License. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Contributor hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable copyright license to reproduce, prepare Derivative Works of, publicly display, publicly perform, sublicense, and distribute the Work and such Derivative Works in Source or Object form.
3. Grant of Patent License. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Contributor hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable (except as stated in this section) patent license to make, have made, use, offer to sell, sell, import, and otherwise transfer the Work, where such license applies only to those patent claims licensable by such Contributor that are necessarily infringed by their Contribution(s) alone or by combination of their Contribution(s) with the Work to which such Contribution(s) was submitted. If You institute patent litigation against any entity (including a cross-claim or counterclaim in a lawsuit) alleging that the Work or a Contribution incorporated within the Work constitutes direct or contributory patent infringement, then any patent licenses granted to You under this License for that Work shall terminate as of the date such litigation is filed.
4. Redistribution. You may reproduce and distribute copies of the Work or Derivative Works thereof in any medium, with or without modifications, and in Source or Object form, provided that You meet the following conditions:
    1. You must give any other recipients of the Work or Derivative Works a copy of this License; and
    2. You must cause any modified files to carry prominent notices stating that You changed the files; and

3. You must retain, in the Source form of any Derivative Works that You distribute, all copyright, patent, trademark, and attribution notices from the Source form of the Work, excluding those notices that do not pertain to any part of the Derivative Works; and
4. If the Work includes a "NOTICE" text file as part of its distribution, then any Derivative Works that You distribute must include a readable copy of the attribution notices contained within such NOTICE file, excluding those notices that do not pertain to any part of the Derivative Works, in at least one of the following places: within a NOTICE text file distributed as part of the Derivative Works; within the Source form or documentation, if provided along with the Derivative Works; or, within a display generated by the Derivative Works, if and wherever such third-party notices normally appear. The contents of the NOTICE file are for informational purposes only and do not modify the License. You may add Your own attribution notices within Derivative Works that You distribute, alongside or as an addendum to the NOTICE text from the Work, provided that such additional attribution notices cannot be construed as modifying the License.

   You may add Your own copyright statement to Your modifications and may provide additional or different license terms and conditions for use, reproduction, or distribution of Your modifications, or for any such Derivative Works as a whole, provided Your use, reproduction, and distribution of the Work otherwise complies with the conditions stated in this License.

5. Submission of Contributions. Unless You explicitly state otherwise, any Contribution intentionally submitted for inclusion in the Work by You to the Licensor shall be under the terms and conditions of this License, without any additional terms or conditions. Notwithstanding the above, nothing herein shall supersede or modify the terms of any separate license agreement you may have executed with Licensor regarding such Contributions.
6. Trademarks. This License does not grant permission to use the trade names, trademarks, service marks, or product names of the Licensor, except as required for reasonable and customary use in describing the origin of the Work and reproducing the content of the NOTICE file.
7. Disclaimer of Warranty. Unless required by applicable law or agreed to in writing, Licensor provides the Work (and each Contributor provides its Contributions) on an "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, either express or implied, including, without limitation, any warranties or conditions of TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. You are solely responsible for determining the appropriateness of using or redistributing the Work and assume any risks associated with Your exercise of permissions under this License.
8. Limitation of Liability. In no event and under no legal theory, whether in tort (including negligence), contract, or otherwise, unless required by applicable law (such as deliberate and grossly negligent acts) or agreed to in writing, shall any Contributor be liable to You for damages, including any direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages of any character arising as a result of this License or out of the use or inability to use the Work (including but not limited to damages for loss of goodwill, work stoppage, computer failure or malfunction, or any and all other commercial damages or losses), even if such Contributor has been advised of the possibility of such damages.
9. Accepting Warranty or Additional Liability. While redistributing the Work or Derivative Works thereof, You may choose to offer, and charge a fee for, acceptance of support, warranty, indemnity, or other liability obligations and/or rights consistent with this License. However, in accepting such obligations, You may act only on Your own behalf and on Your sole responsibility, not on behalf of any other Contributor, and only if You agree to indemnify, defend, and hold each Contributor harmless for any liability incurred by, or claims asserted against, such Contributor by reason of your accepting any

such warranty or additional liability.
END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

---- Part 1: CMU/UCD copyright notice: (BSD like) -----

Copyright 1989, 1991, 1992 by Carnegie Mellon University

Derivative Work - 1996, 1998-2000

Copyright 1996, 1998-2000 The Regents of the University of California

All Rights Reserved

Permission to use, copy, modify and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose and without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice appears in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation, and that the name of CMU and The Regents of the University of California not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the software without specific written permission.

CMU AND THE REGENTS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL CMU OR THE REGENTS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM THE LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

---- Part 2: Networks Associates Technology, Inc copyright notice (BSD) -----

Copyright (c) 2001-2003, Networks Associates Technology, Inc

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
* Neither the name of the Networks Associates Technology, Inc nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 3: Cambridge Broadband Ltd. copyright notice (BSD) -----

Portions of this code are copyright (c) 2001-2003, Cambridge Broadband Ltd.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
* The name of Cambridge Broadband Ltd. may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 4: Sun Microsystems, Inc. copyright notice (BSD) -----

Copyright c 2003 Sun Microsystems, Inc., 4150 Network Circle, Santa Clara, California 95054, U.S.A. All rights reserved.

Use is subject to license terms below.

This distribution may include materials developed by third parties.

Sun, Sun Microsystems, the Sun logo and Solaris are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
* Neither the name of the Sun Microsystems, Inc. nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR

SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 5: Sparta, Inc copyright notice (BSD) -----

Copyright (c) 2003-2012, Sparta, Inc

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
* Neither the name of Sparta, Inc nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 6: Cisco/BUPTNIC copyright notice (BSD) -----

Copyright (c) 2004, Cisco, Inc and Information Network Center of Beijing University of Posts and Telecommunications.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
* Neither the name of Cisco, Inc, Beijing University of Posts and Telecommunications, nor the names of their contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE

ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 7: Fabasoft R&D Software GmbH & Co KG copyright notice (BSD) -----

Copyright (c) Fabasoft R&D Software GmbH & Co KG, 2003 oss@fabasoft.com

Author: Bernhard Penz <bernhard.penz@fabasoft.com>

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
* The name of Fabasoft R&D Software GmbH & Co KG or any of its subsidiaries, brand or product names may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 8: Apple Inc. copyright notice (BSD) -----

Copyright (c) 2007 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of Apple Inc. ("Apple") nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY APPLE AND ITS CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES

OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL APPLE OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 9: ScienceLogic, LLC copyright notice (BSD) -----

Copyright (c) 2009, ScienceLogic, LLC

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
* Neither the name of ScienceLogic, LLC nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 10: Lennart Poettering copyright notice (BSD-like) -----

Copyright 2010 Lennart Poettering

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person
obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files
(the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction,
including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge,
publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software,
and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so,
subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be
included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND,
EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF
MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND
NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS
BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN
ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN
CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE
SOFTWARE.

---- Part 11: IETF copyright notice (BSD) -----

Copyright (c) 2013 IETF Trust and the persons identified as authors of
the code. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without
modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are
met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice,
this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright
notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the
documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

* Neither the name of Internet Society, IETF or IETF Trust, nor the
names of specific contributors, may be used to endorse or promote
products derived from this software without specific prior written
permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS
IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED
TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A
PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER
OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL,
EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,
PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR
PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF
LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING
NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS
SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 12: Arista Networks copyright notice (BSD) ----

Copyright (c) 2013, Arista Networks, Inc.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

* Neither the name of Arista Networks, Inc. nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 13: VMware, Inc. copyright notice (BSD) -----

Copyright (c) 2016, VMware, Inc.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright
notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the
documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

* Neither the name of VMware, Inc. nor the names of its contributors
may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software
without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS
IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,
THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR
PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR
CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL,
EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,
PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS;
OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY,
WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR
OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF
ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 14: USC/Information Sciences Institute copyright notice (BSD) -----

Copyright (c) 2017-2018, Information Sciences Institute

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without
modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice,
this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright
notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the
documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

* Neither the name of Information Sciences Institue nor the names of its
contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from
this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS
IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,
THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR
PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR
CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL,
EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,

PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

MIT License

Copyright (c) 1998, 1999, 2000 Thai Open Source Software Center Ltd

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Copyright 2000 Computing Research Labs, New Mexico State University

Copyright 2001-2015 Francesco Zappa Nardelli

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COMPUTING RESEARCH LAB OR NEW MEXICO STATE UNIVERSITY BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Written by Joel Sherrill <joel@OARcorp.com>.

COPYRIGHT (c) 1989-2000.

On-Line Applications Research Corporation (OAR).

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose without fee is hereby granted, provided that this entire notice is included in all copies of any software which is or includes a copy or modification of this software.

THIS SOFTWARE IS BEING PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY. IN PARTICULAR, THE AUTHOR MAKES NO REPRESENTATION OR WARRANTY OF ANY KIND CONCERNING THE MERCHANTABILITY OF THIS SOFTWARE OR ITS FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

(1) Red Hat Incorporated

Copyright (c) 1994-2009 Red Hat, Inc. All rights reserved.

This copyrighted material is made available to anyone wishing to use, modify, copy, or redistribute it subject to the terms and conditions of the BSD License. This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY expressed or implied, including the implied warranties of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. A copy of this license is available at http://www.opensource.org/licenses. Any Red Hat trademarks that are incorporated in the source code or documentation are not subject to the BSD License and may only be used or replicated with the express permission of Red Hat, Inc.

(2) University of California, Berkeley

Copyright (c) 1981-2000 The Regents of the University of California.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
* Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The FreeType Project LICENSE

2006-Jan-27

Copyright 1996-2002, 2006 by

David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg

Introduction

============

The FreeType Project is distributed in several archive packages; some of them may contain, in addition to the FreeType font engine, various tools and contributions which rely on, or relate to, the FreeType Project.

This license applies to all files found in such packages, and which do not fall under their own explicit license. The license affects thus the FreeType font engine, the test programs, documentation and makefiles, at the very least.

This license was inspired by the BSD, Artistic, and IJG (Independent JPEG Group) licenses, which all encourage inclusion and use of free software in commercial and freeware products alike. As a consequence, its main points are that:

o We don't promise that this software works. However, we will be interested in any kind of bug reports. (`as is' distribution)

o You can use this software for whatever you want, in parts or full form, without having to pay us. (`royalty-free' usage)

o You may not pretend that you wrote this software. If you use it, or only parts of it, in a program, you must acknowledge somewhere in your documentation that you have used the FreeType code. (`credits')

We specifically permit and encourage the inclusion of this software, with or without modifications, in commercial products.

We disclaim all warranties covering The FreeType Project and assume no liability related to The FreeType Project.

Finally, many people asked us for a preferred form for a credit/disclaimer to use in compliance with this license. We thus encourage you to use the following text:

"""

Portions of this software are copyright © <year> The FreeType

Project (www.freetype.org). All rights reserved.

"""

Please replace <year> with the value from the FreeType version you actually use.

Legal Terms

===========

0. Definitions

Throughout this license, the terms `package', `FreeType Project', and `FreeType archive' refer to the set of files originally distributed by the authors (David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg) as the `FreeType Project', be they named as alpha, beta or final release.

`You' refers to the licensee, or person using the project, where `using' is a generic term including compiling the project's source code as well as linking it to form a `program' or `executable'.

This program is referred to as `a program using the FreeType engine'.

This license applies to all files distributed in the original FreeType Project, including all source code, binaries and documentation, unless otherwise stated in the file in its original, unmodified form as distributed in the original archive.

If you are unsure whether or not a particular file is covered by this license, you must contact us to verify this.

The FreeType Project is copyright (C) 1996-2000 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg. All rights reserved except as specified below.

1. No Warranty

THE FREETYPE PROJECT IS PROVIDED `AS IS' WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT WILL ANY OF THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES CAUSED BY THE USE OR THE INABILITY TO USE, OF THE FREETYPE PROJECT.

2. Redistribution

This license grants a worldwide, royalty-free, perpetual and irrevocable right and license to use, execute, perform, compile, display, copy, create derivative works of, distribute and sublicense the FreeType Project (in both source and object code forms) and derivative works thereof for any purpose; and to authorize others to exercise some or all of the rights granted herein, subject to the following conditions:

o Redistribution of source code must retain this license file (`FTL.TXT') unaltered; any additions, deletions or changes to the original files must be clearly indicated in accompanying documentation. The copyright notices of the unaltered, original files must be preserved in all copies of source files.

o Redistribution in binary form must provide a disclaimer that states that the software is based in part of the work of the FreeType Team, in the distribution documentation. We also encourage you to put an URL to the FreeType web page in your documentation, though this isn't mandatory.

These conditions apply to any software derived from or based on the FreeType Project, not just the unmodified files. If you use our work, you must acknowledge us. However, no fee need be paid to us.

3. Advertising

Neither the FreeType authors and contributors nor you shall use the name of the other for commercial, advertising, or promotional purposes without specific prior written permission.

We suggest, but do not require, that you use one or more of the following phrases to refer to this software in your documentation or advertising materials: `FreeType Project', `FreeType Engine', `FreeType library', or `FreeType Distribution'.

As you have not signed this license, you are not required to accept it. However, as the FreeType Project is copyrighted material, only this license, or another one contracted with the authors, grants you the right to use, distribute, and modify it.

Therefore, by using, distributing, or modifying the FreeType Project, you indicate that you understand and accept all the terms of this license.

4. Contacts

There are two mailing lists related to FreeType:

o freetype@nongnu.org

Discusses general use and applications of FreeType, as well as future and wanted additions to the library and distribution.

If you are looking for support, start in this list if you haven't found anything to help you in the documentation.

o freetype-devel@nongnu.org

Discusses bugs, as well as engine internals, design issues, specific licenses, porting, etc.

Our home page can be found at

http://www.freetype.org

--- end of FTL.TXT ---

The TWAIN Toolkit is distributed as is. The developer and distributors of the TWAIN Toolkit expressly disclaim all implied, express or statutory warranties including, without limitation, the implied warranties of merchantability, noninfringement of third party rights and fitness for a particular purpose. Neither the developers nor the distributors will be liable for damages, whether direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential, as a result of the reproduction, modification, distribution or other use of the TWAIN Toolkit.

JSON for Modern C++

Copyright (c) 2013-2017 Niels Lohmann

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Copyright (c) 2011 - 2015 ARM LIMITED

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of ARM nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright (c) 2013, Kenneth MacKay

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright (c) 2014, Kenneth MacKay

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright (c) 2006, CRYPTOGAMS by <appro@openssl.org> All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain copyright notices, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
* Neither the name of the CRYPTOGAMS nor the names of its copyright holder and contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

ALTERNATIVELY, provided that this notice is retained in full, this product may be distributed under the terms of the GNU General Public License (GPL), in which case the provisions of the GPL apply INSTEAD OF those given above.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

ISC License

Copyright (c) 2013-2017

Frank Denis <j at pureftpd dot org>

Permission to use, copy, modify, and/or distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND THE AUTHOR DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE

OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

Copyright (c) 2008 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc.

All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to The NetBSD Foundation
by Lennart Augustsson (lennart@augustsson.net) at
Carlstedt Research & Technology.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without
modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions
are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright
   notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright
   notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the
   documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE NETBSD FOUNDATION, INC. AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright (c) 2000 Intel Corporation

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without
modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice,
this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice,
this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation
and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
* Neither name of Intel Corporation nor the names of its contributors
may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software
without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR

A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL INTEL OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Lua

Copyright © 1994–2014 Lua.org, PUC-Rio.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated
documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the
rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to
permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of
the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED,
INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN
ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH
THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

LuaSocket

LuaSocket 2.0.2 license
Copyright © 2004-2007 Diego Nehab

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a
copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"),
to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation
the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense,
and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the
Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in
all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY,

FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

LuneScript

Copyright (c) 2018 ifritJP

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Copyright (c) 2002-2019, Jouni Malinen <j@w1.fi> and contributors
All Rights Reserved.

This software may be distributed, used, and modified under the terms of BSD license:

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name(s) of the above-listed copyright holder(s) nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT

LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright (C) 2019, Broadcom Corporation. All Rights Reserved.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and/or distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND THE AUTHOR DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

The certificate files "Amazon Root CA 1", "Amazon Root CA 2", "Amazon Root CA 4" are licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NoDerivatives 4.0 International License.

This software is licensed under the MIT License.

Copyright Fedor Indutny, 2018.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR

OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

The following applies only to products supporting Wi-Fi.

(c) 2009-2013 by Jeff Mott. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions, and the following disclaimer.
* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions, and the following disclaimer in the documentation or other materials provided with the distribution.
* Neither the name CryptoJS nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS," AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright 2008, Google Inc.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
* Neither the name of Google Inc. nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS AS IS AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT

LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright (c) 1998-2010, Brian Gladman, Worcester, UK. All rights reserved.

The redistribution and use of this software (with or without changes)
is allowed without the payment of fees or royalties provided that:
source code distributions include the above copyright notice, this
list of conditions and the following disclaimer;
binary distributions include the above copyright notice, this list
of conditions and the following disclaimer in their documentation.

This software is provided 'as is' with no explicit or implied warranties
in respect of its operation, including, but not limited to, correctness
and fitness for purpose.

Disclaimer: IMPORTANT: This Apple software is supplied to you, by Apple Inc. ("Apple"), in your capacity as a current, and in good standing, Licensee in the MFi Licensing Program. Use of this Apple software is governed by and subject to the terms and conditions of your MFi License, including, but not limited to, the restrictions specified in the provision entitled "Public Software", and is further subject to your agreement to the following additional terms, and your agreement that the use, installation, modification or redistribution of this Apple software constitutes acceptance of these additional terms. If you do not agree with these additional terms, please do not use, install, modify or redistribute this Apple software.

Subject to all of these terms and in consideration of your agreement to abide by them, Apple grants you, for as long as you are a current and in good-standing MFi Licensee, a personal, non-exclusive license, under Apple's copyrights in this original Apple software (the "Apple Software"), to use, reproduce, and modify the Apple Software in source form, and to use, reproduce, modify, and redistribute the Apple Software, with or without modifications, in binary form. While you may not redistribute the Apple Software in source form, should you redistribute the Apple Software in binary form, you must retain this notice and the following text and disclaimers in all such redistributions of the Apple Software. Neither the name, trademarks, service marks, or logos of Apple Inc. may be used to endorse or promote products derived from the Apple Software without specific prior written permission from Apple. Except as expressly stated in this notice, no other rights or licenses, express or implied, are granted by Apple herein, including but not limited to any patent rights that may be infringed by your derivative works or by other works in which the Apple Software may be incorporated.

Unless you explicitly state otherwise, if you provide any ideas, suggestions, recommendations, bug fixes or enhancements to Apple in connection with this software ("Feedback"), you hereby grant to Apple a non-exclusive, fully paid-up, perpetual, irrevocable, worldwide license to make, use, reproduce, incorporate, modify, display, perform, sell, make or have made derivative works of, distribute (directly or indirectly) and sublicense, such Feedback in connection with Apple products and services. Providing this Feedback is voluntary, but if you do provide Feedback to Apple, you

acknowledge and agree that Apple may exercise the license granted above without the payment of royalties or further consideration to Participant.

The Apple Software is provided by Apple on an "AS IS" basis. APPLE MAKES NO WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR
IMPLIED, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY
AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, REGARDING THE APPLE SOFTWARE OR ITS USE AND OPERATION ALONE OR
IN COMBINATION WITH YOUR PRODUCTS.

IN NO EVENT SHALL APPLE BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES
(INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR
PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE, REPRODUCTION, MODIFICATION
AND/OR DISTRIBUTION OF THE APPLE SOFTWARE, HOWEVER CAUSED AND WHETHER UNDER THEORY OF CONTRACT, TORT
(INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE), STRICT LIABILITY OR OTHERWISE, EVEN IF APPLE HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE
POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright (C) 2009 Apple Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Copyright (c) 2012-2013 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Copyright (C) 2013 Apple Inc. All Rights Reserved.

The following applies only to products supporting the cloud integration service (formerly known as PIXUS Cloud Link, PIXMA Cloud Link, or MAXIFY Cloud Link).

THE BASIC LIBRARY FUNCTIONS

Written by: Philip Hazel
Email local part: ph10
Email domain: cam.ac.uk
University of Cambridge Computing Service, Cambridge, England.
Copyright (c) 1997-2012 University of Cambridge
All rights reserved.

PCRE JUST-IN-TIME COMPILATION SUPPORT

Written by: Zoltan Herczeg
Email local part: hzmester
Emain domain: freemail.hu
Copyright(c) 2010-2012 Zoltan Herczeg
All rights reserved.

STACK-LESS JUST-IN-TIME COMPILER

Written by: Zoltan Herczeg
Email local part: hzmester
Emain domain: freemail.hu
Copyright(c) 2009-2012 Zoltan Herczeg
All rights reserved.

THE C++ WRAPPER FUNCTIONS

Contributed by: Google Inc.
Copyright (c) 2007-2012, Google Inc.
All rights reserved.

THE "BSD" LICENCE

----------Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice,
this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright
notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the
documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

* Neither the name of the University of Cambridge nor the name of Google
Inc. nor the names of their contributors may be used to endorse or
promote products derived from this software without specific prior
written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS"
AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE
IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE
ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE
LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR
CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF
SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS
INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN
CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE)
ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE
POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

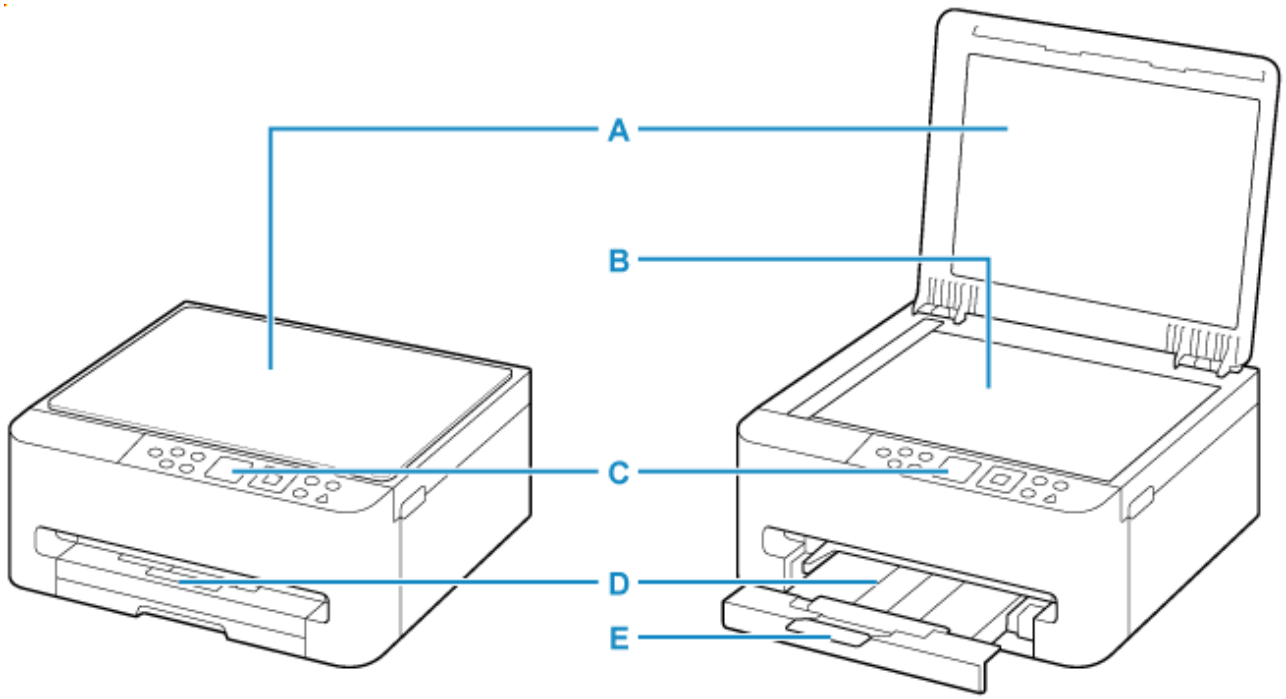
Main Components and Their Use

- Main Components
- Power Supply
- Loading Paper
- Loading Originals

Main Components

- Front View
- Rear View
- Inside View
- Operation Panel

Front View



A: Document Cover

Open to load an original on the platen.

B: Platen

Load an original here.

C: Operation Panel

Use to change the settings of the printer or to operate it.

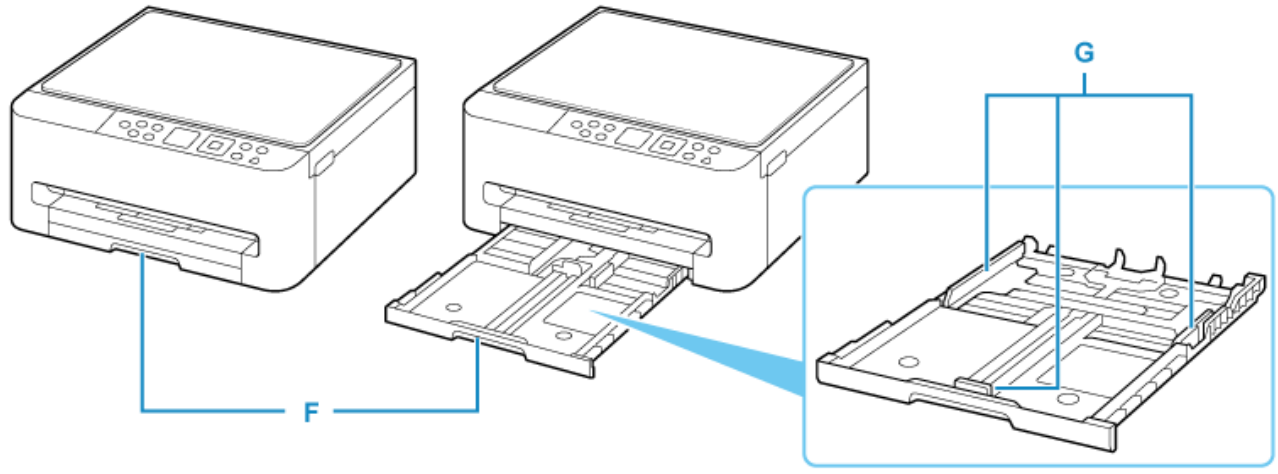
➡ Operation Panel

D: Paper Output Tray

Printed paper is ejected. Pull out it before printing.

E: Output Tray Extension

Open to support ejected paper.



F: Cassette

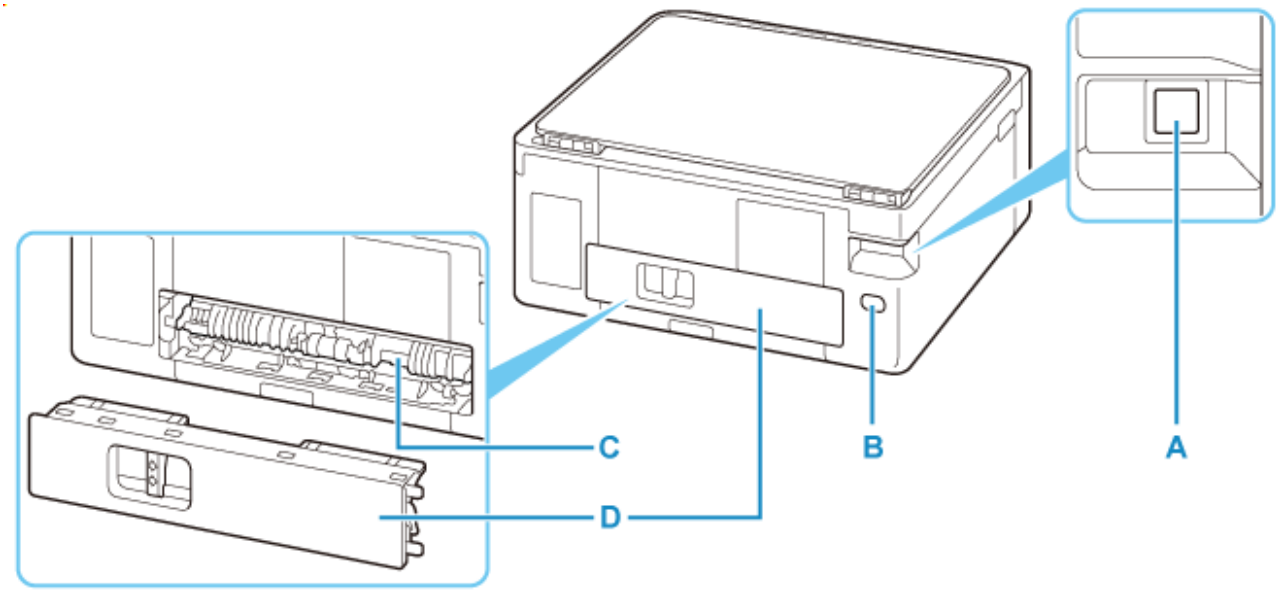
Load paper into the cassette, and insert it into the printer.

- Loading Paper
- Supported Paper Sizes and Weights

G: Paper Guides

Align with right/left/front sides of the paper stack.

Rear View



A: USB Port

Plug in the USB cable to connect the printer with a computer.

B: Power Cord Connector

Plug in the supplied power cord.

C: Transport Unit

Open when removing jammed paper. When removing the unit, do so after placing a finger on the depression in the center right.

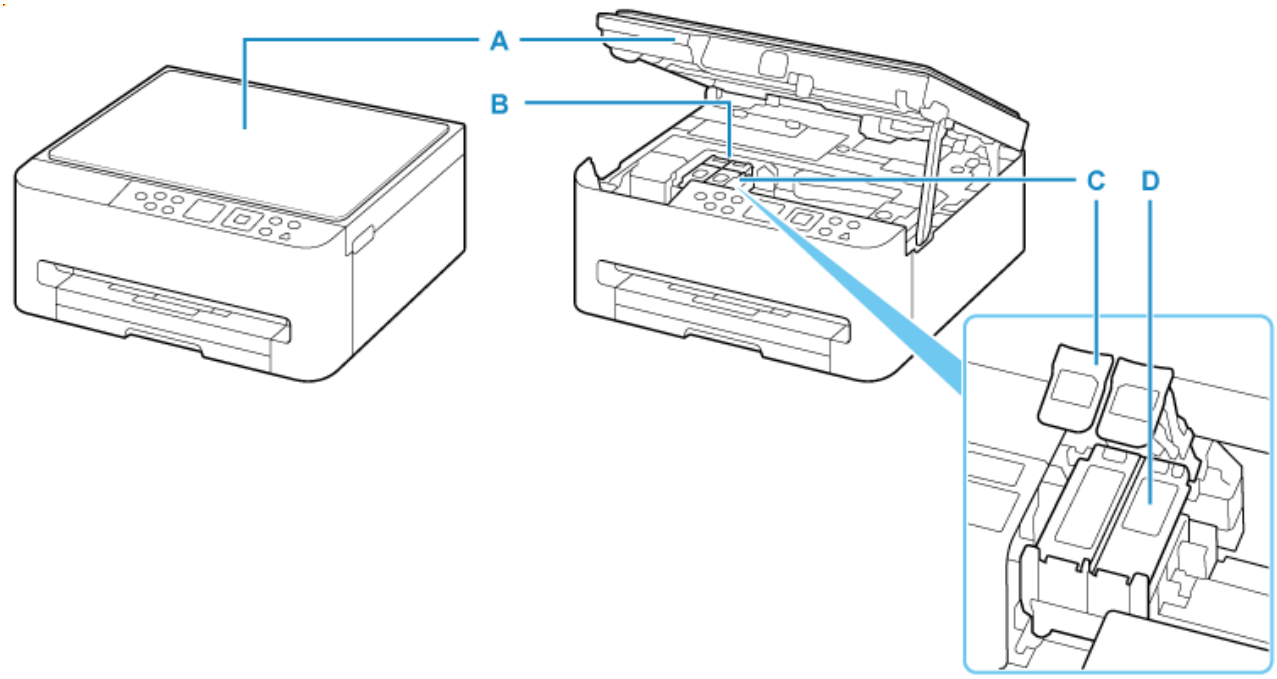
D: Rear Cover

Detach when removing jammed paper.

Important

- Do not touch the metal casing.
- Do not plug in or unplug the USB cable while the printer is printing or scanning with the computer. This can cause trouble.

Inside View



A: Scanning Unit / Cover

Scans originals. Open when replacing the FINE cartridge and to remove jammed paper.

B: FINE Cartridge Holder

Install the FINE cartridge.

The color FINE cartridge should be installed into the left slot and the black FINE cartridge should be installed into the right slot.

C: Ink Cartridge Locking Cover

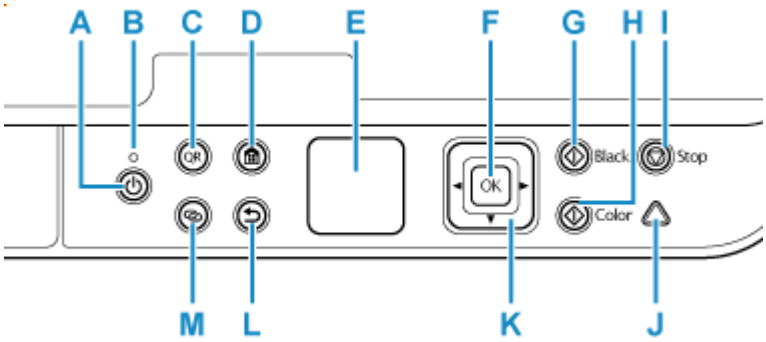
Secures the installed FINE cartridge.

D: FINE Cartridge (ink cartridges)

A replaceable cartridge that integrates print head and ink tank.

➡ Replacing a FINE Cartridge

Operation Panel



A: ON button

Turns the power on or off. Before turning on the power, make sure that the document cover is closed.

➡ Turning the Printer On and Off

B: ON lamp

Lights after flashing when the power is turned on.

C: QR button

A QR code is displayed when you press the button while the **QR** button lights. You can then gain access to the Online Manual that describes operative functions.

Cost of connecting to Internet is to be born by the customer. Depending on your smartphone or tablet, you may not be able to scan a QR code.

D: HOME button

Used to display the HOME screen.

➡ LCD and Operation Panel

E: LCD (Liquid Crystal Display)

Displays messages, menu items, and operating status.

➡ LCD and Operation Panel

➡ Entering Numbers, Letters, and Symbols

F: OK button

Finalizes your selection of items. Also used to resolve errors.

G: Black button

Starts black & white copying, scanning, etc.

H: Color button

Starts color copying, scanning, etc.

I: Stop button

Cancels operation when print, copy, or scan job is in progress.

J: Alarm lamp

Lights or flashes when an error occurs.

K: ▲▼◀ ▶ buttons

Used to select a menu or setting item. These buttons are also used for entering characters.

L: Back button

Returns to the previous screen.

M: Wireless connect button

When you hold down the button, the button lights. The printer is then put into the standby mode for easy connection in a PC and smartphone.

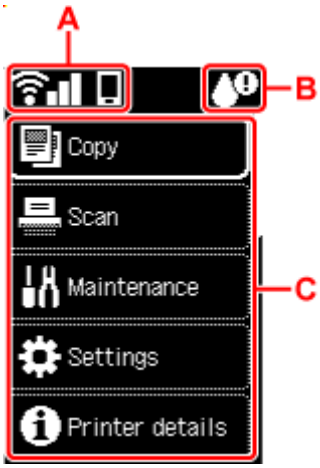
➡ Easy Wireless Connect

LCD and Operation Panel

The HOME screen on the LCD appears when the printer is turned on.

- HOME Screen
- Basic Operation of the Operation Panel

HOME Screen



A: Network

Displays the current network status.

The icon differs depending on the network of use or the network status.

Wi-Fi is enabled and the printer is connected to the wireless router.

Note

- Depending on the signal state, the icon will change.

  (Signal strength: 81 % or more): You can use the printer over Wi-Fi without any problems.

  (Signal strength: 51 % or more): The problem such as the printer cannot print may occur according to the network status. We recommend placing the printer near the wireless router.

  (Signal strength: 50 % or less): The problem such as the printer cannot print may occur. Place the printer near the wireless router.

Wi-Fi is enabled but the printer is not connected to the wireless router.

Wireless Direct is enabled.

Network is disabled.

B: Ink information

A symbol appears if there is any information about the remaining ink level.

The ink is running low. Prepare a new ink tank.

Ink has run out. Replace the ink tank with a new ink tank.

➡ Checking Ink Status on the LCD

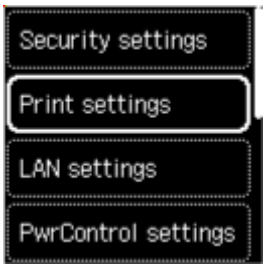
C: Basic menu

Select each item when you want to use the basic functions of a printer, maintain a printer, or change each setting.

➡ Changing Settings from Operation Panel

Basic Operation of the Operation Panel

To determine a menu or setting items, select an ▲▼ button and press the **OK** button.



➡ Entering Numbers, Letters, and Symbols

Entering Numbers, Letters, and Symbols

The buttons on the operation panel allow you to enter (or change) characters, numbers, or symbols.

Adjust the setting to the position, to be changed, using the ◀ ▶ button and specify it by pressing the ▲ ▼ button.

After entry is completed, press the **OK** button for determination.

If a keyboard is displayed, select the ▲ ▼ ◀ ▶ button and press the **OK** button for entry.

Switch the character entry mode.

Switch the upper-/lower-case letters or symbols on a keyboard.

Delete the characters entered just before.

Insert a blank (space).

Determine the contents of entered data.

Note

- Only the input modes or characters available for input appear in their respective screens.
- You can switch the layout of a keyboard.

  ➡ Other device settings

Power Supply

- Turning the Printer On and Off

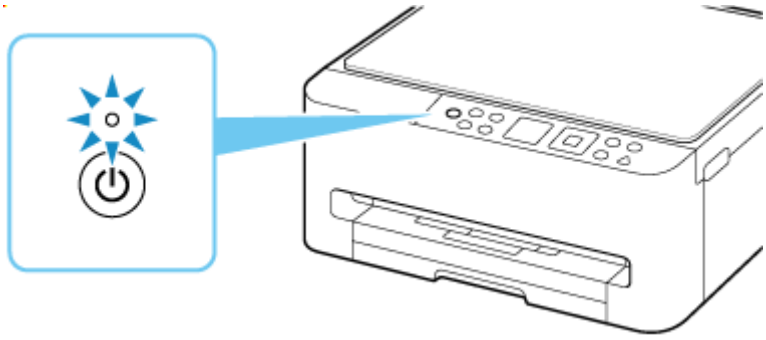
Turning the Printer On and Off

- Checking that Power Is On
- Turning on the printer
- Turning off the printer

Checking that Power Is On

The ON lamp is lit when the printer is turned on.

Even if the LCD is off, if the **ON** lamp is lit, the printer is on.



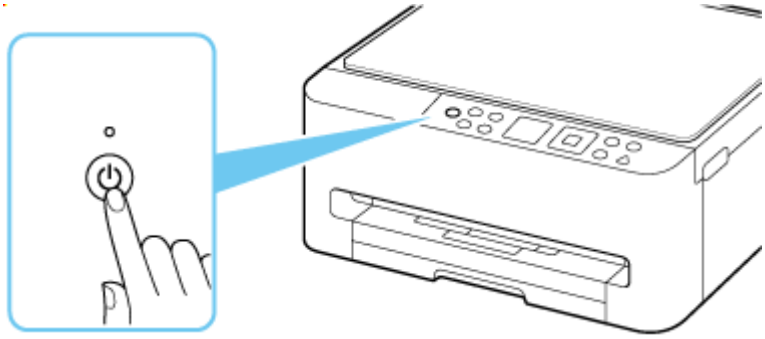
Note

- The LCD will turn off if the printer is not operated for about 11 minutes. To restore the display, press any button or perform the print operation.

Turning on the printer

Press the ON button to turn on the printer.

The **ON** lamp flashes and then remains lit.



Note

- It may take a while for the printer to start printing immediately after you turn on the printer.
- If an error message is displayed on the LCD, see When Error Occurred.
- You can set the printer to automatically turn on when a print or scan operation is performed from a computer connected by USB cable or wireless network. This feature is set to off by default.

  From the printer

➡ ECO settings

From the computer

– For Windows:

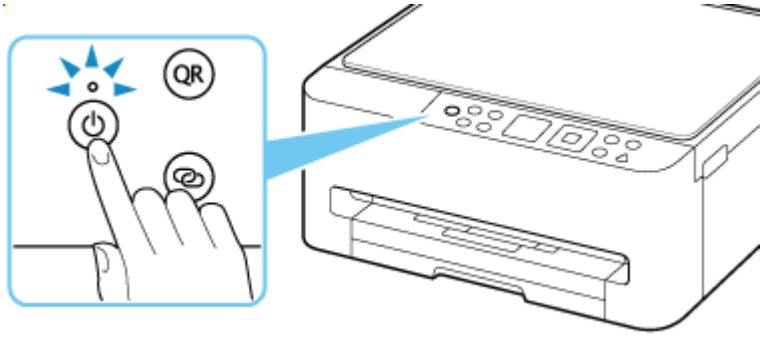
➡ Managing the Printer Power

– For macOS:

➡ Managing the Printer Power

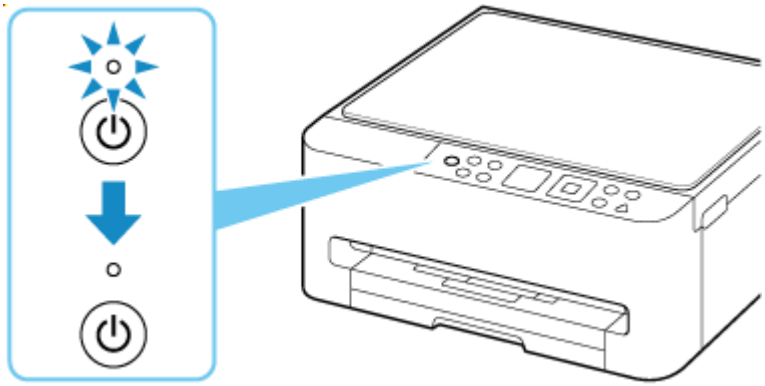
Turning off the printer

1. Press the **ON** button to turn the printer off.



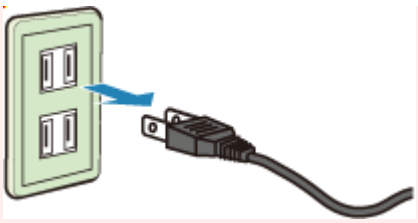
2. Confirm that the **ON** lamp is off.

When the **ON** lamp stops flashing, the printer is turned off.



Important

- When you unplug the power cord, press the **ON** button, then confirm that the **ON** lamp is off. Unplugging the power cord while the **ON** lamp is lit or flashing may cause drying or clogging of the print head and print quality may be reduced.



Loading Paper

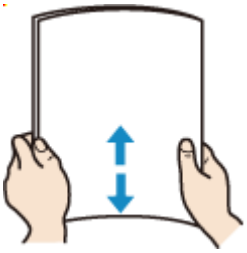
- Loading Plain Paper
- Loading Photo Paper
- Loading Envelopes

Loading Plain Paper

You can load plain paper.

1. Prepare paper.

   Align the edges of paper. If paper is curled, flatten it.

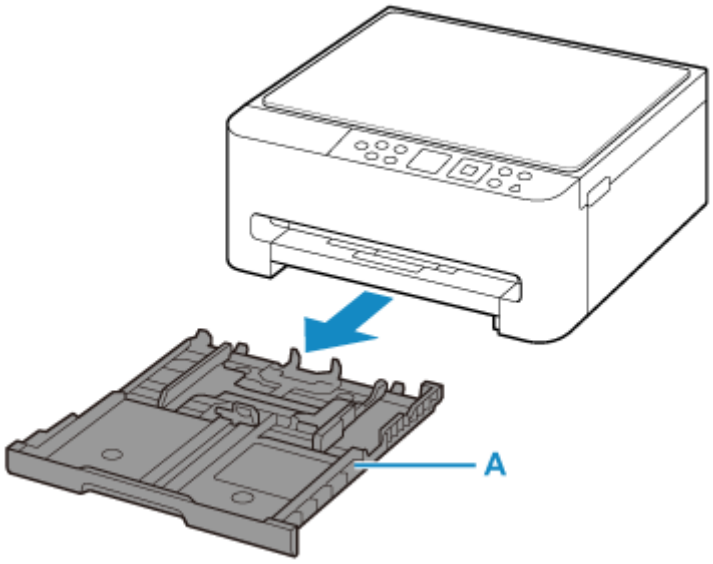


Note

- Align the edges of paper neatly before loading. Loading paper without aligning the edges may cause paper jams.
- If paper is curled, hold the curled corners and gently bend them in the opposite direction until the paper becomes completely flat.

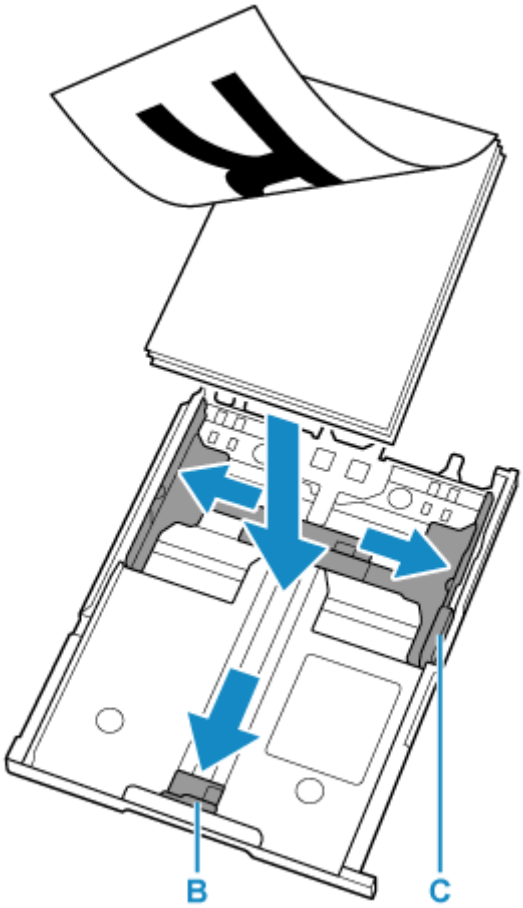
  For more details on handling curled paper, see Check 3 in Printed Surface Is Smudged/ Scratched/Ink Blots/Paper Curl/Paper Is Smudged During Automatic 2-sided Printing.

2. Pull out the cassette (A) from the printer.



3. Slide paper guides (B) in front and (C) on right to open guides.

   Load paper stack in portrait orientation WITH THE PRINT SIDE FACING DOWN, and place it in center of cassette.



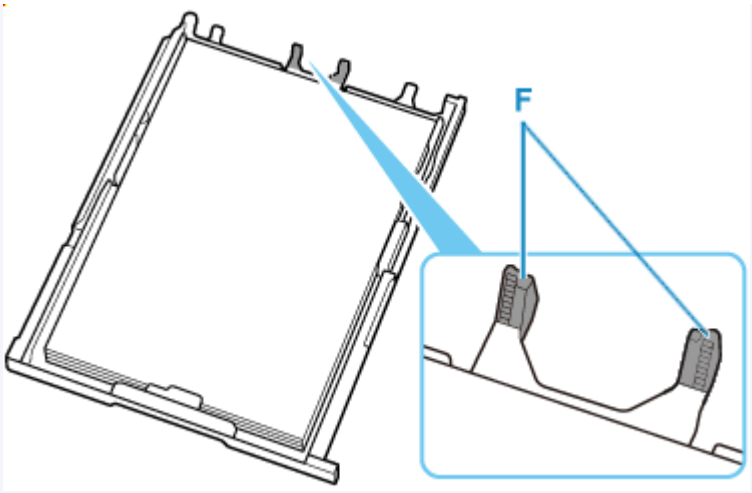
Important

- Always load paper in portrait orientation (D). Loading paper in landscape orientation (E) can cause paper jams.

Note

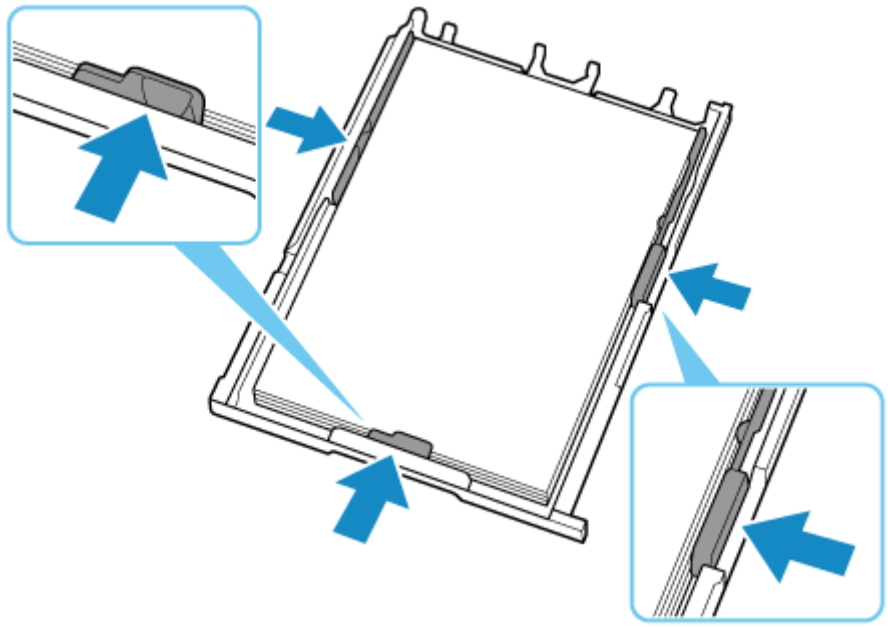
- Align paper with the line on the cassette to load.

  Paper may not be fed into the printer correctly if it presses against the protrusion (F).



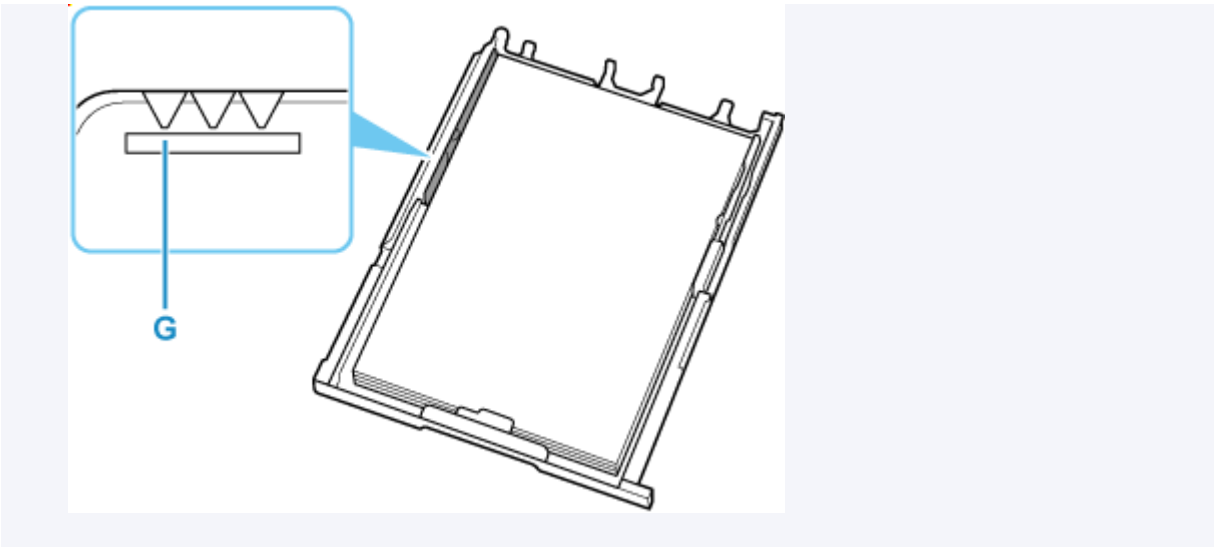
4. Move the paper guide and adjust the guides to edge of the paper stack.

Do not slide the paper guides too tightly against the paper. The paper may not be fed properly.



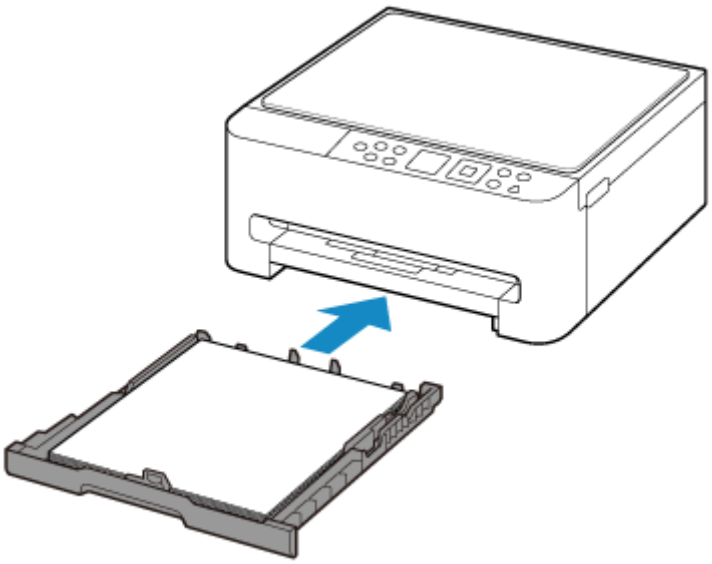
Note

- Do not load sheets of paper higher than the load limit mark (G).



5. Insert cassette into printer.

Push the cassette into the printer until it stops.



After inserting the cassette into the printer, the paper setting confirmation screen for the cassette appears on the LCD.

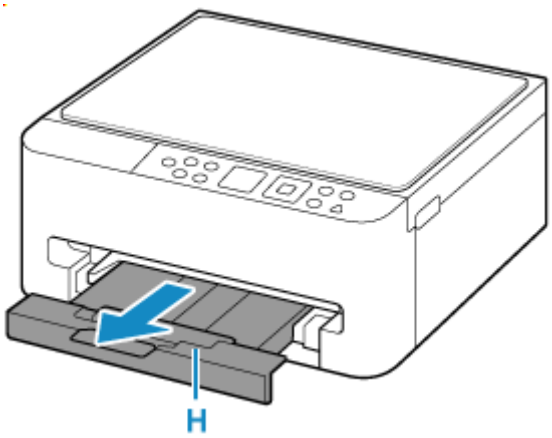
6. If page size on LCD matches size of paper loaded in cassette, select **OK**.

If not, select **Change** to change the settings in accordance with the size of the loaded paper.

Note

- See Detect paper width when you want to hide the screen for confirming the setting of paper.

7. Pull out the paper output tray (H).



Note

- To prevent incorrect printing, this printer has a function that detects whether the settings for the paper loaded on the cassette matches the paper settings. Before printing, make print settings in accordance with the paper settings.

Related Information

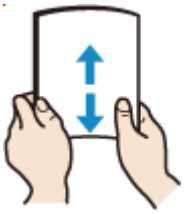
- Handling Paper
- Unsupported Media Types

Loading Photo Paper

You can load photo paper.

1. Prepare paper.

   Align the edges of paper. If paper is curled, flatten it.

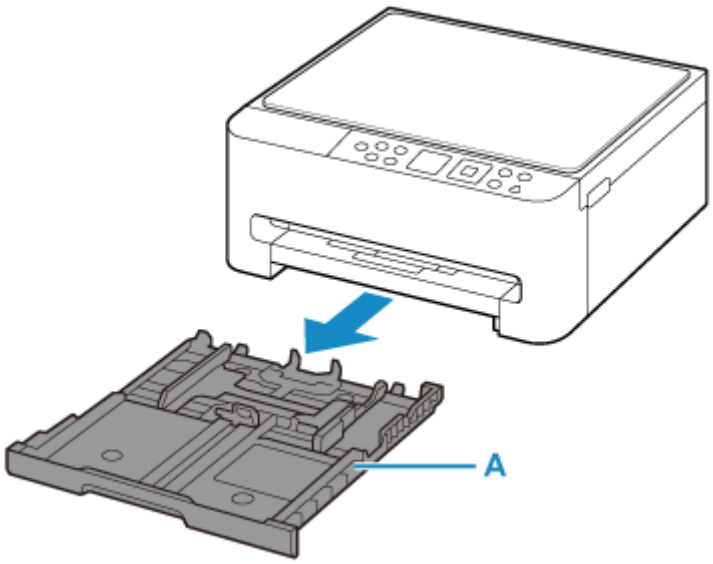


Note

- Align the edges of paper neatly before loading. Loading paper without aligning the edges may cause paper jams.
- If paper is curled, hold the curled corners and gently bend them in the opposite direction until the paper becomes completely flat.

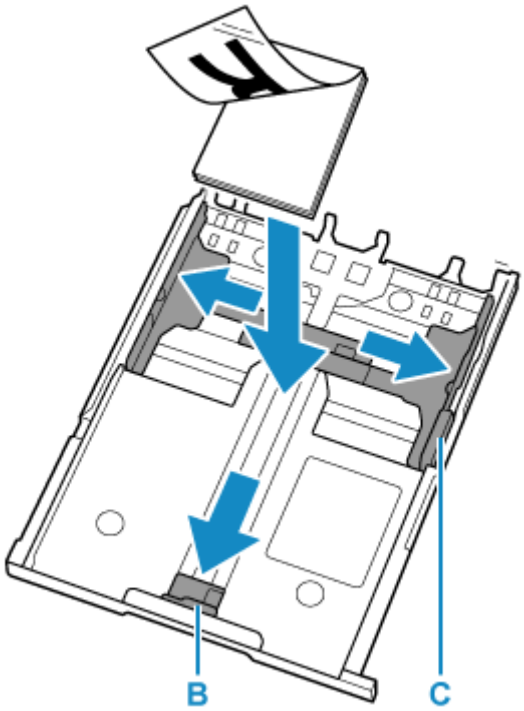
  For more details on handling curled paper, see Check 3 in Printed Surface Is Smudged/ Scratched/Ink Blots/Paper Curl/Paper Is Smudged During Automatic 2-sided Printing.
- When using Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss SG-201, even if the sheet is curled, load one sheet at a time as it is. If you roll up this paper to flatten, this may cause cracks on the surface of the paper and reduce the print quality.

2. Pull out the cassette (A) from the printer.



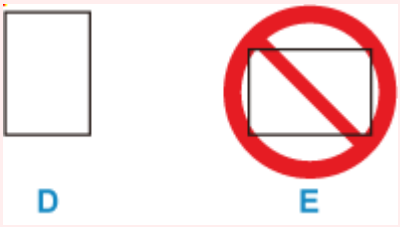
3. Slide paper guides (B) in front and (C) on right to open guides.

   Load paper stack in portrait orientation WITH THE PRINT SIDE FACING DOWN, and place it in center of cassette.



Important

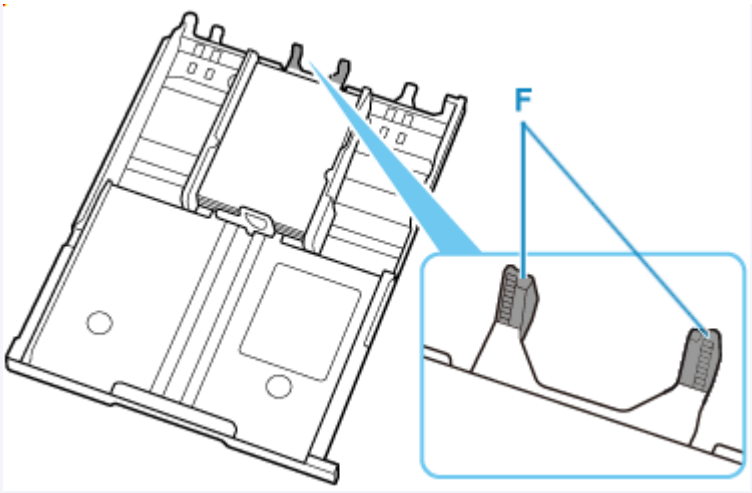
- Always load paper in portrait orientation (D). Loading paper in landscape orientation (E) can cause paper jams.



Note

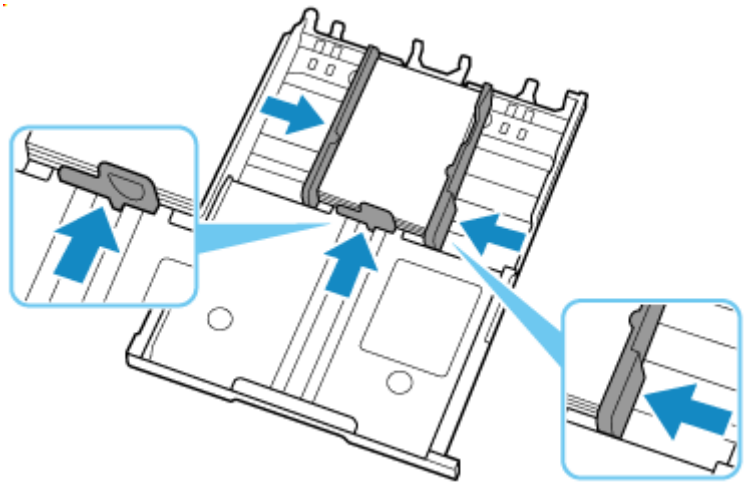
- For paper with a front and a back side, such as photo papers, load the whiter side (the glossy side) face down.
- Align paper with the line on the cassette to load.

  Paper may not be fed into the printer correctly if it presses against the protrusion (F).



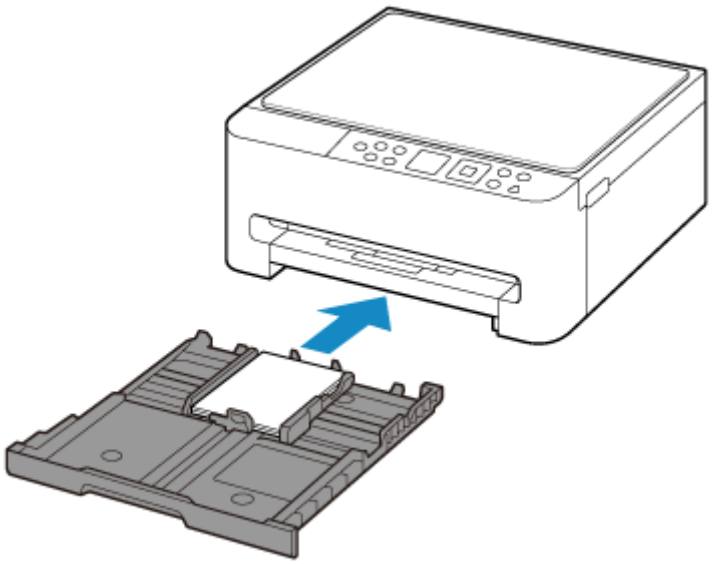
4. Move the paper guide and adjust the guides to edge of the paper stack.

   Do not slide the paper guides too tightly against the paper. The paper may not be fed properly.



5. Insert cassette into printer.

   Push the cassette into the printer until it stops.



After inserting the cassette into the printer, the paper setting confirmation screen for the cassette appears on the LCD.

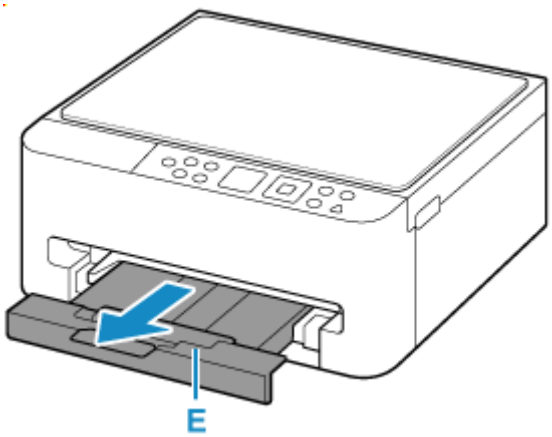
6. If page size on LCD matches size of paper loaded in cassette, select **OK**.

   If not, select **Change** to change the settings in accordance with the size of the loaded paper.

Note

- See Detect paper width when you want to hide the screen for confirming the setting of paper.

7. Pull out the paper output tray (G).



Note

- There are various types of paper, such as paper with a special surface coating for printing photos at optimal quality and paper suitable for documents. Each media type has specific preset settings (how ink is used and sprayed, distance from nozzles, etc.), that allow you to print to that type with optimal image quality. The wrong paper settings may cause poor printout color quality or scratches on the printed surface. If you notice blurring or uneven colors, increase the print quality setting and try printing again.
- To prevent incorrect printing, this printer has a function that detects whether the settings for the paper loaded on the cassette matches the paper settings. Before printing, make print settings in accordance with the paper settings.

Related Information

- Handling Paper
- Unsupported Media Types

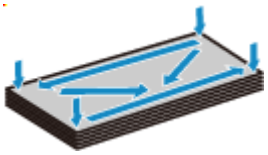
Loading Envelopes

The address is automatically rotated and printed according to the envelope's direction by specifying with the printer driver properly.

Important

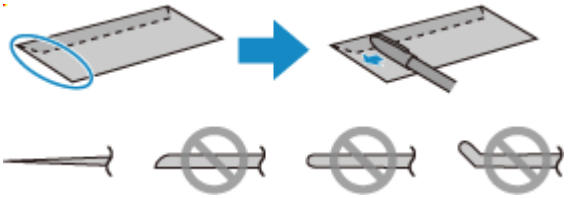
- Do not use the following envelopes. They could jam in the printer or cause the printer to malfunction.
  - Envelopes with an embossed or treated surface
  - Envelopes with a double flap
  - Envelopes whose gummed flaps are already moistened and adhesive

1. Prepare envelopes.
   - Press down on all four corners and edges of the envelopes to flatten them.



   - If the envelopes are curled, hold the opposite corners and gently twist them in the opposite direction.

   - If the corner of the envelope flap is folded, flatten it.
   - Use a pen to press the leading edge in the inserting direction flat and sharpen the crease.

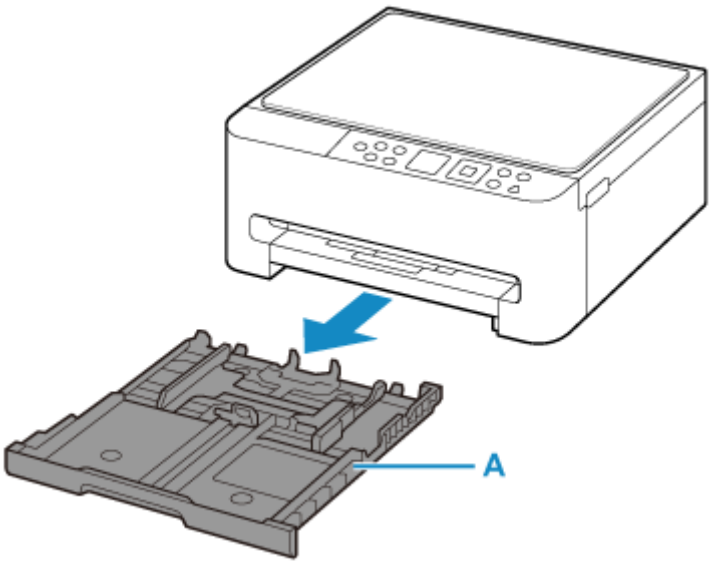


   The figures above show a side view of the leading edge of the envelope.

   Important

   - The envelopes may jam in the printer if they are not flat or the edges are not aligned. Make sure that no curl or puff exceeds 0.12 in. (3 mm).

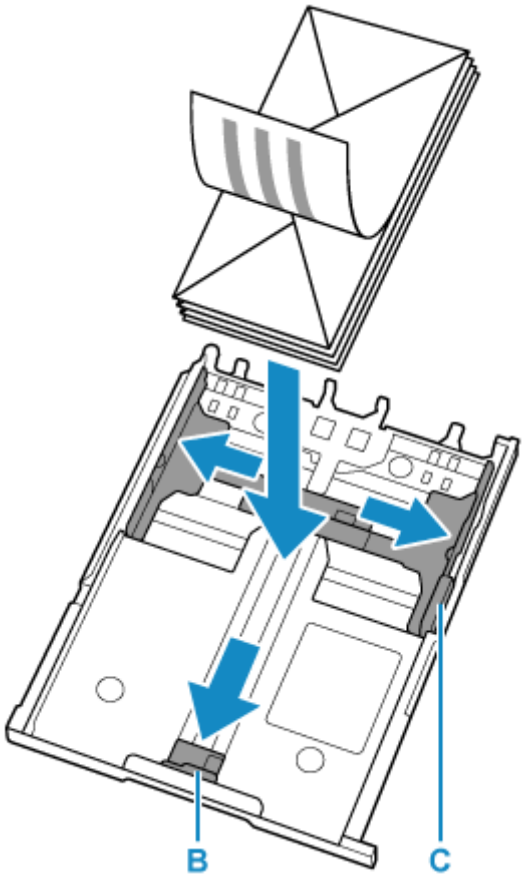
2. Pull out the cassette (A) from the printer.



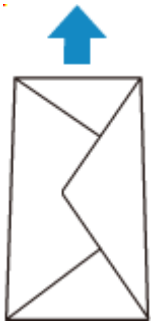
3. Slide paper guides (B) in front and (C) on right to open guides.

   Load envelopes in portrait orientation WITH THE PRINT SIDE FACING DOWN, and place it in center of cassette.

   Up to 10 envelopes can be loaded at once.



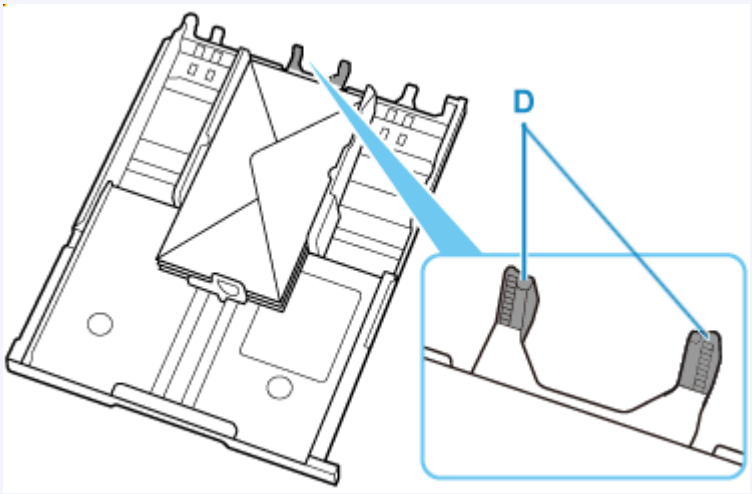
   Set the envelopes in portrait orientation with the address side down and the folded flap on the right.



Note

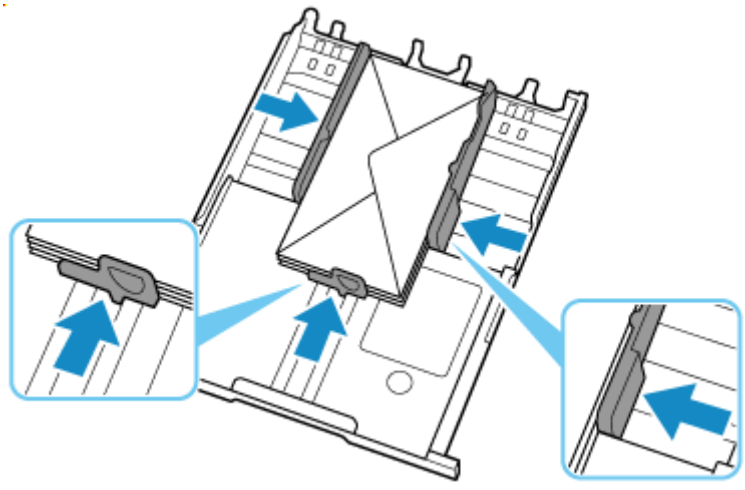
- Align paper with the line on the cassette to load.

  Paper may not be fed into the printer correctly if it presses against the protrusion (D).



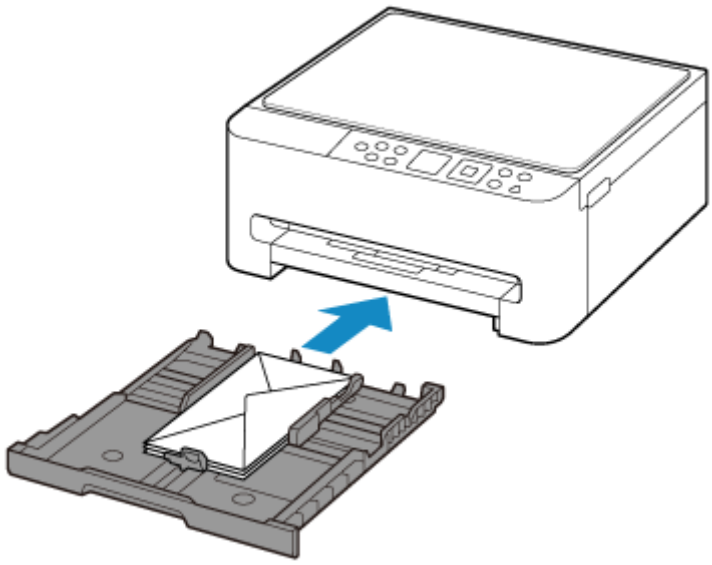
4. Move the paper guide and adjust the guides to edge of the paper stack.

   Do not slide the paper guides too tightly against the paper. The paper may not be fed properly.



5. Insert cassette into printer.

   Push the cassette into the printer until it stops.



After inserting the cassette into the printer, the paper setting confirmation screen for the cassette appears on the LCD.

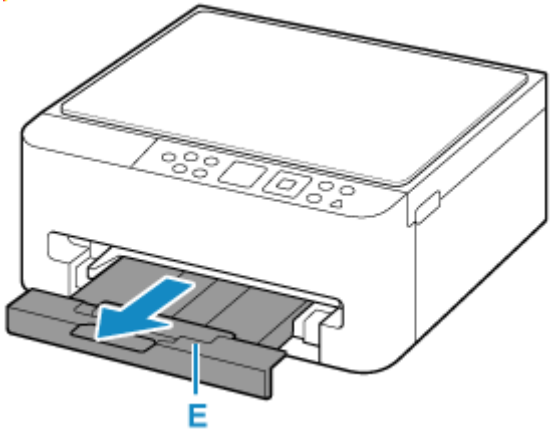
6. If page size and media type shown on LCD match size and type of paper loaded in cassette, select **OK**.

   If not, select **Change** to change the settings in accordance with the size of the loaded paper.

Note

- See Detect paper width when you want to hide the screen for confirming the setting of paper.

7. Pull out the paper output tray (E).



Note

- To prevent incorrect printing, this printer has a function that detects whether the settings for the paper loaded on the cassette matches the paper settings. Before printing, make print settings in accordance with the paper settings.

Related Information

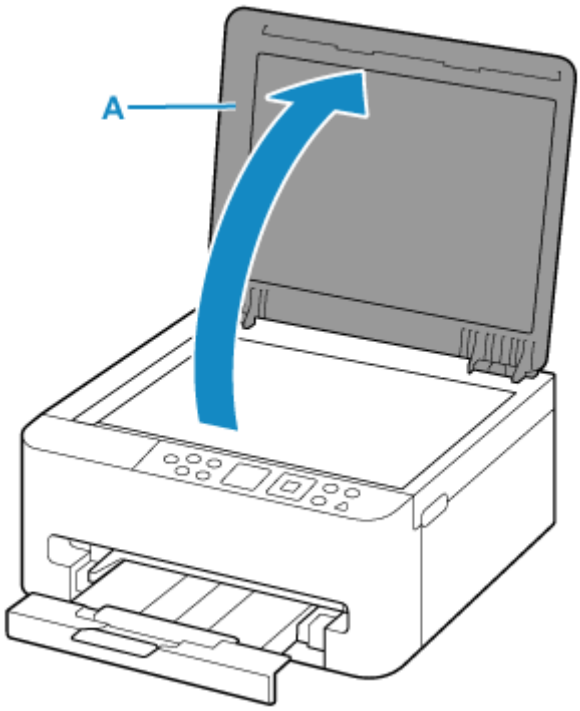
- Handling Paper
- Unsupported Media Types

Loading Originals

- Loading Originals on Platen
- Loading Based on Use
- Supported Originals
- How to Detach / Attach the Document Cover

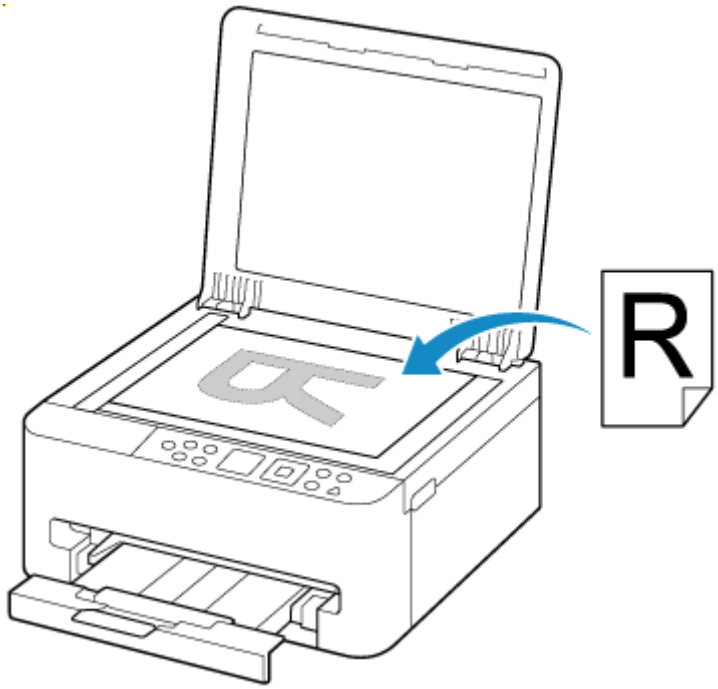
Loading Originals on Platen

1. Open the document cover (A).



2. Load original WITH THE SIDE TO SCAN FACING DOWN on platen.

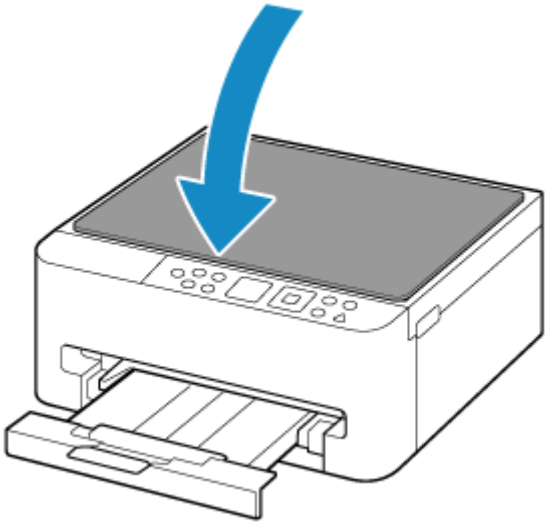
- Loading Based on Use
- Supported Originals



Important

- Be sure to observe the following when loading the original on the platen. Failure to observe the following may cause the scanner to malfunction or the platen glass to break.
  - Do not place any objects weighing 4.4 lb (2.0 kg) or more on the platen glass.
  - Do not put any pressure of 4.4 lb (2.0 kg) or more on the platen glass, such as pressing down the original.

3. Close the document cover gently.



Important

- After loading the original on the platen, be sure to close the document cover before starting to copy or scan.

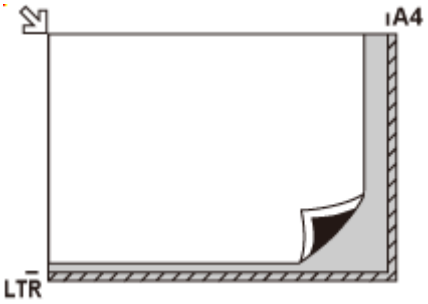
Loading Based on Use

Load the original in the correct position according to the function to use. If you do not load the original correctly, it may not be scanned properly.

Originals	Function	How to Load
Magazines, Newspapers, and Documents	**Copying**	➡ Loading the Original to Be Aligned with the alignment mark
	Scanning by detecting the type and size of the original automatically If you scan using the operation panel, select **Auto scan** for document type in **Scan**.	
	Scanning by specifying a standard size (A4, Letter, etc.) If you scan using the operation panel, select **Document** or **Photo** for document type in **Scan** and specify a standard size (A4, Letter, etc.) for **Scan size** to scan originals.	
Photos, Postcards, Business Cards, and Disc (BD/DVD/CD)	**Scanning only one original** If you scan using the operation panel, follow the operation below. • Select **Auto scan** for document type in **Scan**. • Select **Photo** for document type in **Scan** and specify **Auto scan** for **Scan size** to scan originals.	➡ Loading Only One Original in Center of Platen
	Scanning two or more originals If you scan using the operation panel, follow the operation below. • Select **Auto scan** for document type in **Scan**. • Select **Photo** for document type in **Scan** and specify **Auto multi scan** for **Scan size** to scan two or more originals.	➡ Loading Two or More Originals on Platen

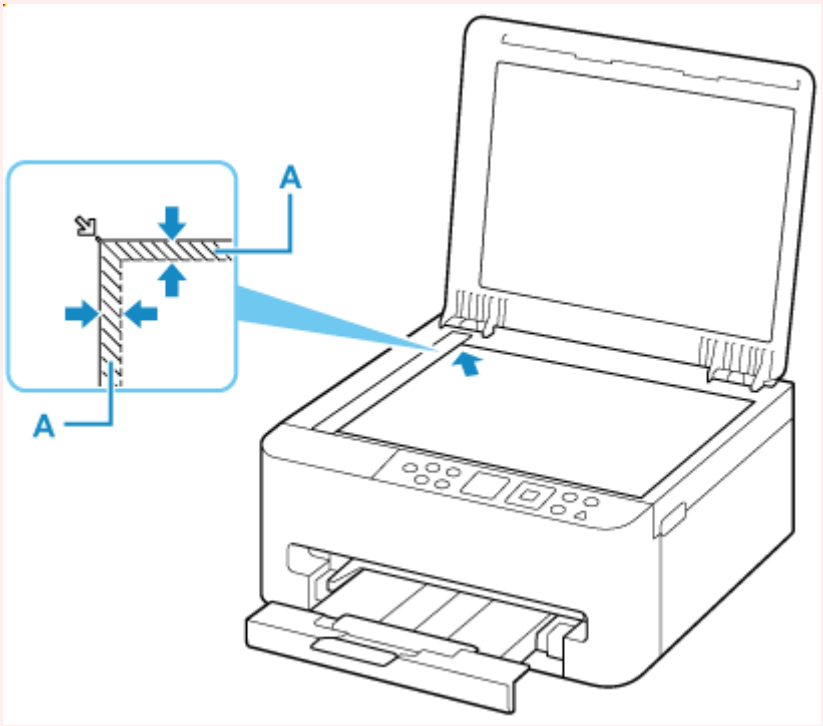
Loading the Original to Be Aligned with the alignment mark

Place the original WITH THE SIDE TO SCAN FACING DOWN on the platen and align it with the alignment mark . Portions placed on the diagonally striped area cannot be scanned.



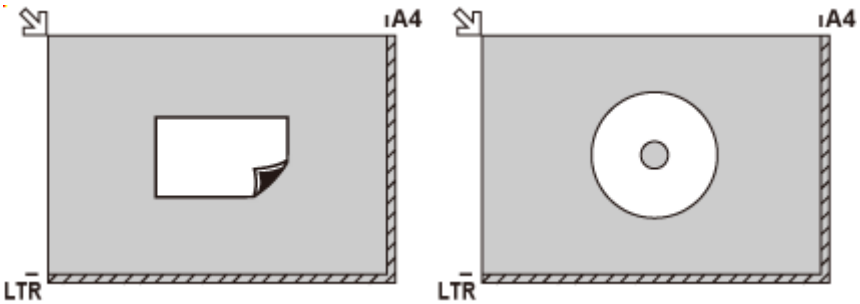
Important

- The printer cannot scan the striped area (A) (0.04 in. (1 mm) from the edges of the platen glass).



Loading Only One Original in Center of Platen

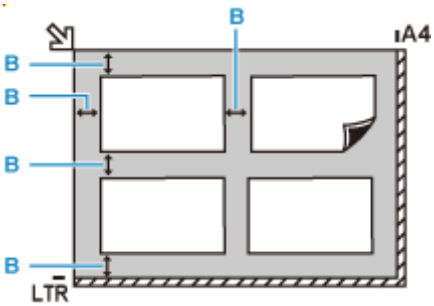
Place the original WITH THE SIDE TO SCAN FACING DOWN, with 0.40 in. (1 cm) or more space between the edges (diagonally striped area) of the platen. Portions placed on the diagonally striped area cannot be scanned.



Loading Two or More Originals on Platen

Place the originals WITH THE SIDE TO SCAN FACING DOWN. Allow 0.40 in. (1 cm) or more space between the edges (diagonally striped area) of the platen and the originals, and between the originals. Portions placed on the diagonally striped area cannot be scanned.

You can place up to 12 items.



B: More than 0.40 in. (1 cm)

Note

- The Skew Correction function automatically compensates for the originals placed at an angle of up to approximately 10 degrees. Slanted photos with a long edge of 7.1 in. (180 mm) or more cannot be corrected.
- Non-rectangular or irregular shaped photos (such as cut out photos) may not be scanned properly.

Supported Originals

Item	Details
Types of originals	Text document, magazine, or newspaper Printed photo, postcard, business card, or disc (BD/DVD/CD, etc.)
Size (width x height)	Max. 8.5 x 11.7 in. (216 x 297 mm)

Note

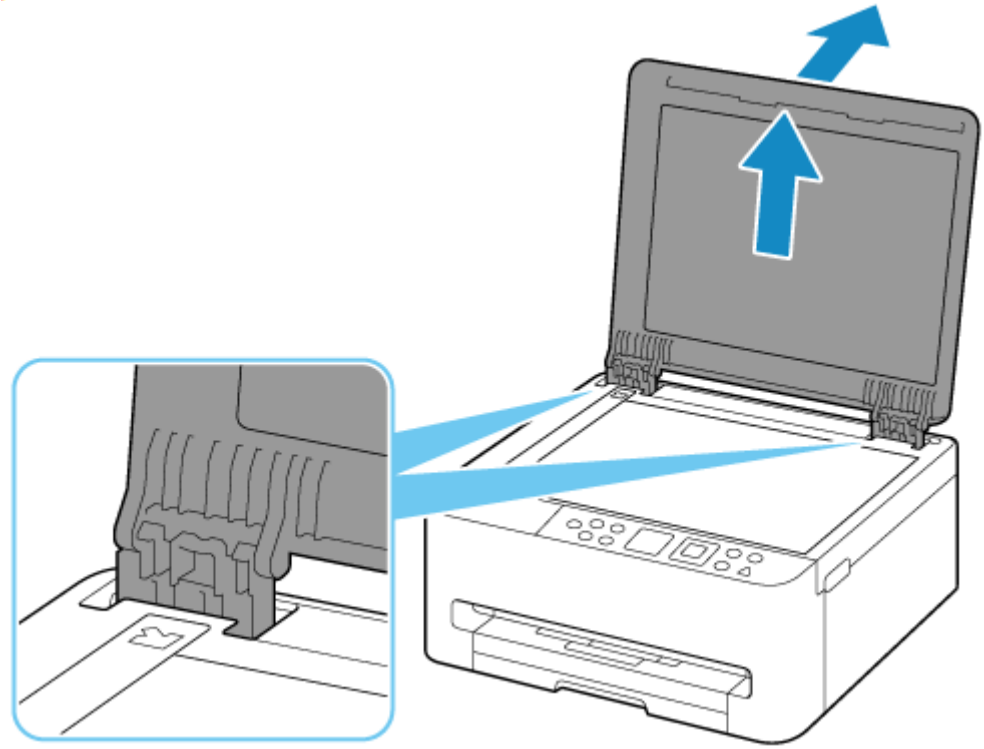
- When loading a thick original such as a book on the platen, you can load it by removing the document cover from the printer.

  How to Detach / Attach the Document Cover

How to Detach / Attach the Document Cover

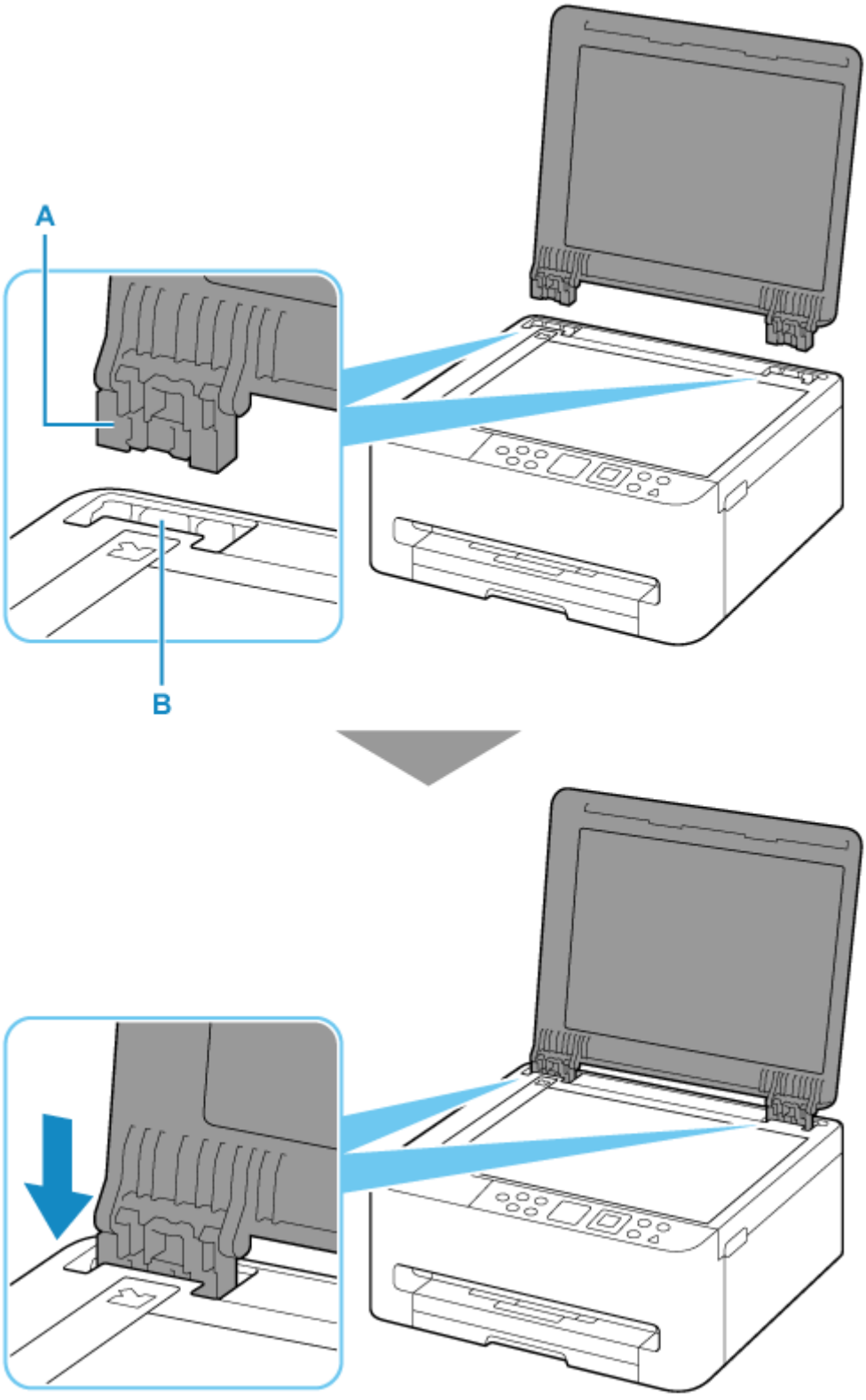
Detaching the document cover:

Hold up the document cover in portrait orientation and then tip it back.



Attaching the document cover:

Fit both hinges (A) of the document cover into the holder (B) and insert both hinges of the document cover vertically.


A
B

Replacing a FINE Cartridge

- Replacing a FINE Cartridge
- Checking Ink Status on the LCD

Replacing a FINE Cartridge

When remaining ink cautions or errors occur, the error message will appear on the LCD to inform you of the error. In this state, the printer cannot print or scan. Check the error message and take appropriate action.

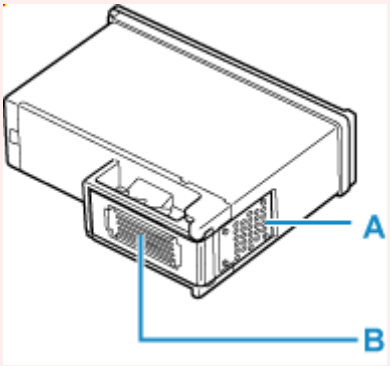
➡ When Error Occurred

Replacing Procedure

When you need to replace a FINE cartridge, follow the procedure below.

Important

- Do not touch the electrical contacts (A) or print head nozzle (B) on a FINE cartridge. The printer may not print properly if you touch them.



- If you remove a FINE cartridge, replace it immediately. Do not leave the printer with the FINE cartridge removed.
- Use a new FINE cartridge for replacement. Installing a used FINE cartridge may cause the nozzles to clog.

  Furthermore, with such a FINE cartridge, the printer will not be able to inform you when to replace the FINE cartridge properly.

Note

- For Windows, if a FINE cartridge runs out of ink, you can print with either color or black FINE cartridge, in whichever ink remains, only for a while.

  For information on how to configure this setting, see below.

  ➡ Setting the Ink to be Used
- Color ink may be consumed even when printing a black-and-white document or when black-and-white printing is specified.

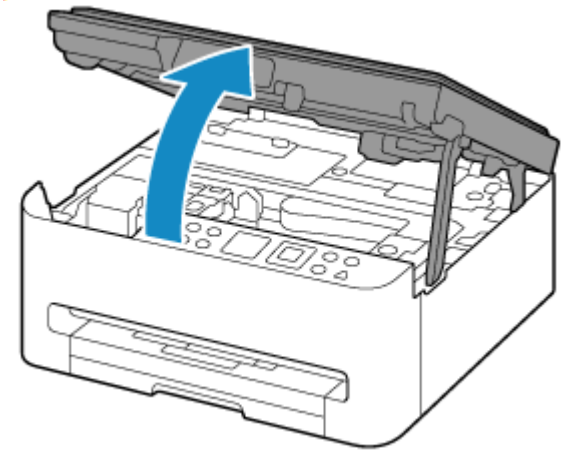
  Both color ink and black ink are also consumed in the standard cleaning and deep cleaning of the print head, which may be necessary to maintain the performance of the printer. When ink runs out, replace the FINE cartridge immediately with a new one.

  ➡ Ink Tips

1. Check that printer is turned on.

2. Open the scanning unit / cover.

The FINE cartridge holder moves to the replacement position.

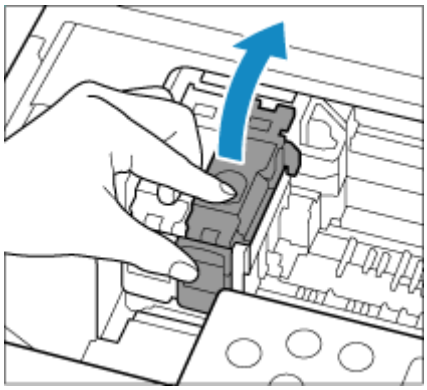


Important

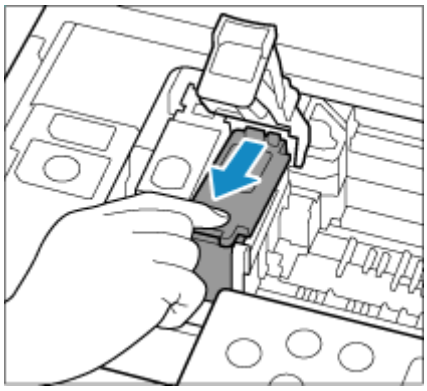
- Do not touch the metallic parts or other parts inside the printer.

3. Remove the empty FINE cartridge.

1. Pick up the ink cartridge locking cover to open it.

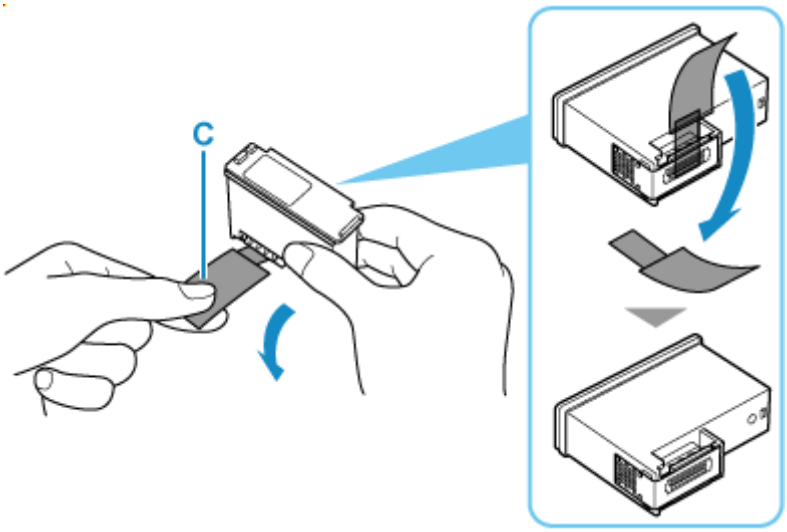


2. Remove the FINE cartridge.



4. Prepare a new FINE cartridge.

1. Take new FINE cartridge out of its package and remove protective tape (C) gently.



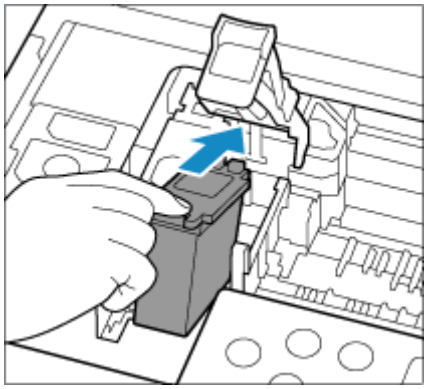
Important

- Do not touch the electrical contacts or print head nozzle on a FINE cartridge. The printer may not print properly if you touch them.

5. Install the FINE cartridge.

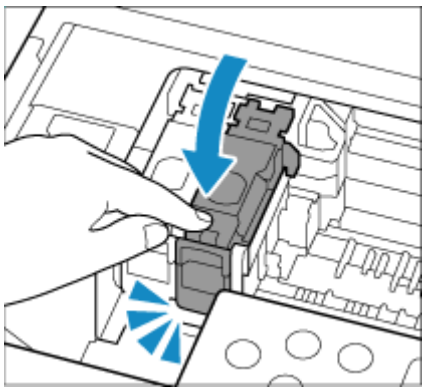
1. Insert the new FINE cartridge into the FINE cartridge holder.

   The color FINE cartridge should be installed into the left slot and the black FINE cartridge should be installed into the right slot.



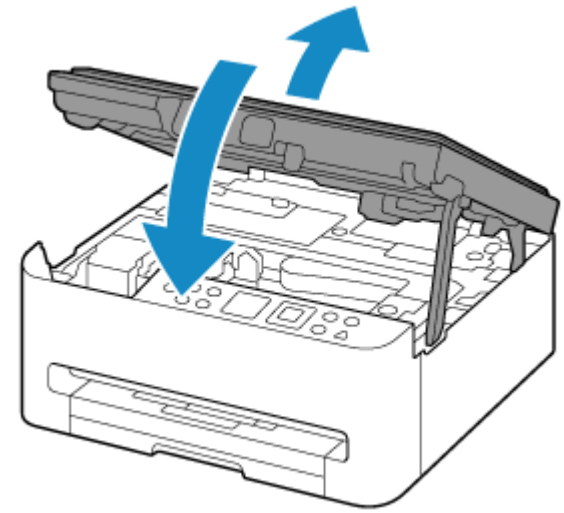
2. Close the ink cartridge locking cover to secure the FINE cartridge.

   Push the ink cartridge locking cover fully until a "click" sound is heard.



6. Close the scanning unit / cover.

To close the scanning unit / cover, hold it up once, then take it down gently.



Note

- If the error message appears on the LCD after the scanning unit / cover is closed, take appropriate action.

  ➡ When Error Occurred

- If the print head is out of alignment, as indicated by misaligned printed ruled lines or similar symptoms, align the print head.

Checking Ink Status on the LCD

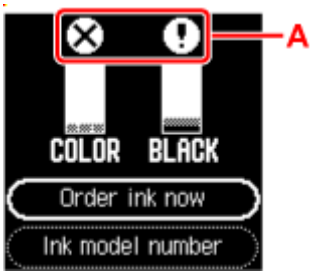
1. Check that printer is turned on.

2. Select **Printer details** on the HOME screen.

   ➡ LCD and Operation Panel

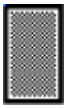
3. Select **Estimated ink levels**.

   A symbol appears in the area A if there is any information about the remaining ink level.



The ink is running low. Prepare a new FINE cartridge.

Ink has run out. Replace the FINE cartridge with a new FINE cartridge.

 This appears when remaining ink level is not known.

Note

- The above screen shows estimated ink levels.
- Select **Order ink now** and press the **QR** button to display the QR code and access the ink purchasing site. Cost of connecting to Internet is to be born by the customer.
- You can check the ink numbers by selecting **Ink model number**.
- You can also check the ink status on the computer screen.
  - For Windows:

    ➡ Checking Ink Status from Your Computer
  - For macOS:

    ➡ Checking Ink Status from Your Computer

Performing Maintenance Functions from the Printer

- Maintenance Procedure
- Printing the Nozzle Check Pattern
- Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern
- Cleaning the Print Head
- Deep Print Head Cleaning
- Aligning the Print Head
- Aligning the Print Head Manually

Maintenance Procedure

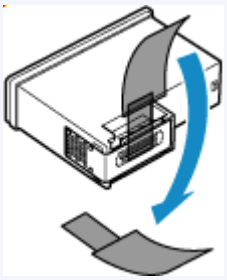
If print results are blurred, colors are not printed correctly, or print results are unsatisfactory (e.g. misaligned printed ruled lines), perform the maintenance procedure below.

Important

- Do not rinse or wipe the FINE cartridge. This can cause trouble with the FINE cartridge.

Note

- Make sure that the orange protective tape does not remain on the FINE cartridge.



- Check if ink remains in the FINE cartridge.

  ➡ Checking Ink Status on the LCD

- For Windows, increasing the print quality in the printer driver settings may improve the print result.

  ➡ Set Media Type, Quality, etc. (Media/Quality Tab)

When the Print Results Are Blurred or Uneven:

Step 1 Print the nozzle check pattern.

From the printer

➡ Printing the Nozzle Check Pattern

From the computer

- For Windows:

  ➡ Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern

- For macOS:

  ➡ Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern

Step 2 Examine the nozzle check pattern.

If there are missing lines or horizontal streaks in the pattern:

Step 3 Clean the print head.

From the printer

➡ Cleaning the Print Head

From the computer

- For Windows:
  ➡ Cleaning the Print Heads
- For macOS:
  ➡ Cleaning the Print Heads

After cleaning the print head, print and examine the nozzle check pattern: ➡ Step 1

If the problem is not resolved after performing from step 1 to step 3 twice:

Step 4 Clean the print head deeply.

From the printer

➡ Deep Print Head Cleaning

From the computer

- For Windows:
  ➡ Cleaning the Print Heads
- For macOS:
  ➡ Cleaning the Print Heads

If the problem is not resolved, turn off the power and clean the print head deeply again after 24 hours.

If the problem is still not resolved:

Step5 Replace the FINE cartridge.

➡ Replacing a FINE Cartridge

Note

- If the problem is still not resolved after replacing the FINE cartridge, contact Canon to request a repair.

When the Print Results Are Not Even such as the Ruled Lines Are Misaligned:

Step Align the print head.

From the printer

➡ Aligning the Print Head

From the computer

- For Windows:

➡ Adjusting Print Head Position Automatically

- For macOS:

  ➡ Adjusting Print Head Position

Printing the Nozzle Check Pattern

Print the nozzle check pattern to determine whether the ink ejects properly from the print head nozzle.

Note

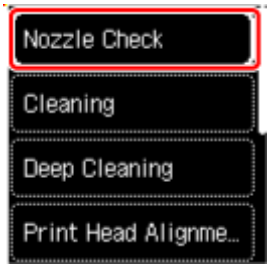
- If the remaining ink level is low, the nozzle check pattern will not be printed correctly. Replace the FINE cartridge whose ink is low.

You need to prepare: a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper

1. Check that printer is turned on.
2. Load a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper in the cassette.

   ➡ Loading Plain Paper
3. Select **Maintenance** on the HOME screen.

   ➡ LCD and Operation Panel
4. Select **Nozzle Check**.

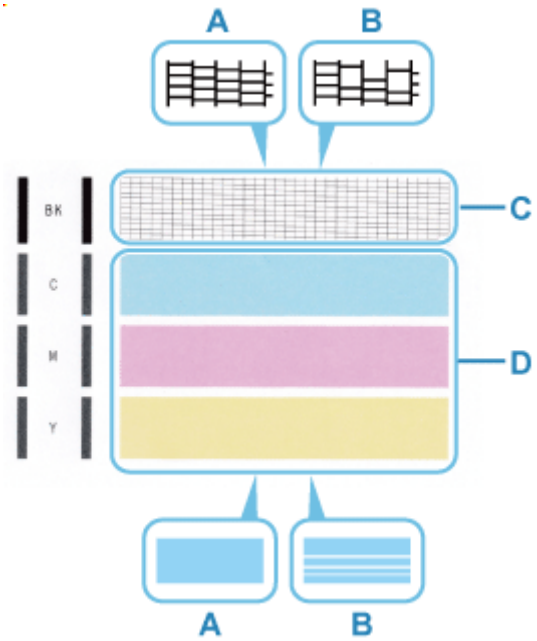
   The confirmation screen will appear.
5. Select **Yes**.
6. Press the **OK** button.

   The nozzle check pattern will be printed and the confirmation screen will appear on the LCD.
7. Select **Next**.
8. Examine the nozzle check pattern.

Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern

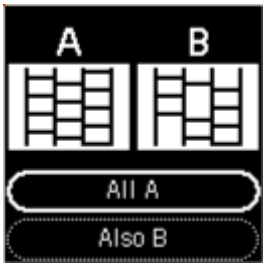
Examine the nozzle check pattern, and clean the print head if necessary.

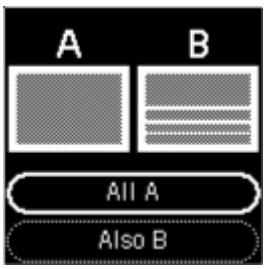
1. Check if there are missing lines in the pattern C or horizontal streaks in the pattern D.



A: No missing lines/No horizontal streaks
B: Lines are missing/Horizontal streaks are present

2. Select the pattern that is closer to the printed nozzle check pattern on the confirmation screen.





For A (no missing lines or no horizontal streaks) in both the pattern C and pattern D:

The cleaning is not required. Select **All A**, confirm the message, then select **OK**.

The screen will return to the maintenance screen.

For B (lines are missing or horizontal streaks are present) in the pattern C or pattern D, or in both patterns:

The cleaning is required. Select **Also B**, then select **Yes** on the cleaning confirmation screen.

The printer starts cleaning the print head.

➡ Cleaning the Print Head

If the pattern C or any color in the pattern D is not printed:

(Example: Magenta pattern is not printed)

The cleaning is required. Select **Also B**, then select **Yes** on the cleaning confirmation screen.

The printer starts cleaning the print head.

➡ Cleaning the Print Head

Cleaning the Print Head

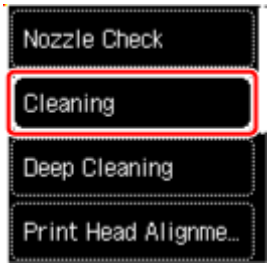
Clean the print head if lines are missing or if horizontal streaks are present in the printed nozzle check pattern. Cleaning unclogs the nozzles and restores the print head condition. Cleaning the print head consumes ink, so clean the print head only when necessary.

You need to prepare: a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper

1. Check that printer is turned on.
2. Load a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper in the cassette.

   ➡ Loading Plain Paper
3. Select **Maintenance** on the HOME screen.

   ➡ LCD and Operation Panel
4. Select **Cleaning**.

   The confirmation screen will appear.
5. Select **Yes**.

   The printer starts cleaning the print head.

   Do not perform any other operations until the printer completes the cleaning of the print head.

   The pattern print confirmation screen will appear.
6. Select **Yes**.
7. Press the **OK** button.

   The nozzle check pattern will be printed.
8. Select **Next**.
9. Examine the nozzle check pattern.

Note

- If the problem is not resolved after cleaning the print head twice, clean the print head deeply.

Deep Print Head Cleaning

If print quality does not improve by the standard cleaning of the print head, clean the print head deeply. Cleaning the print head deeply consumes more ink than the standard cleaning of the print head, so clean the print head deeply only when necessary.

You need to prepare: a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper

1. Check that printer is turned on.
2. Load a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper in the cassette.
   - Loading Plain Paper
3. Select **Maintenance** on the HOME screen.
   - LCD and Operation Panel
4. Select **Deep Cleaning**.

   The confirmation screen will appear.
5. Select **Yes**.

   The printer starts cleaning the print head deeply.

   Do not perform any other operations until the printer completes the deep cleaning of the print head.

   The pattern print confirmation screen will appear.
6. Select **Yes**.
7. Press the **OK** button.

   The nozzle check pattern will be printed.
8. When the completion message appears, select **OK**.
9. Examine the nozzle check pattern.

If the problem is not resolved, turn off the power and clean the print head deeply again after 24 hours.

If the problem is still not resolved, replace the FINE cartridge with a new one. If the problem is still not resolved after replacing the FINE cartridge, contact Canon to request a repair.

Aligning the Print Head

If printed ruled lines are misaligned or print results are otherwise unsatisfactory, adjust the print head position.

Note

- If the remaining ink level is low, the print head alignment sheet will not be printed correctly.

  If the remaining ink level is low, replace the FINE cartridge.
- If ink runs out as the print head alignment sheet is printed, an error message appears on the LCD.

  ➡ When Error Occurred

You need to prepare: a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper

1. Check that printer is turned on.
2. Load a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper in the cassette.

   ➡ Loading Plain Paper
3. Select **Maintenance** on the HOME screen.

   ➡ LCD and Operation Panel
4. Select **Print Head Alignment - Auto**.

   The confirmation screen will appear.

   Note

   - To print and check the current head position adjustment values, select **Print the head alignment value**.
5. Select **Yes**.
6. Press the **OK** button.

   The print head alignment sheet is printed, and the print head is aligned automatically.

   Note

   - If automatic print head alignment fails, an error message appears on the LCD.

➡ When Error Occurred

7. When the completion message appears, select **OK**.

Note

- If the print results are still not satisfactory after adjusting the print head position as described above, adjust the print head position manually.
  - For Windows:

    You can also align the print head manually.

    ➡ Adjusting Print Head Position Manually

Aligning the Print Head Manually

Try aligning the print head manually after automatic print head alignment if printing results are not as expected, as when printed ruled lines are misaligned.

You need to prepare: two sheets of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper

1. Check that printer is turned on.
2. Load two sheets of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper in the cassette.

   ➡ Loading Plain Paper
3. Select **Maintenance** on the HOME screen.

   ➡ LCD and Operation Panel
4. Select **Print Head Alignment - Manual**.

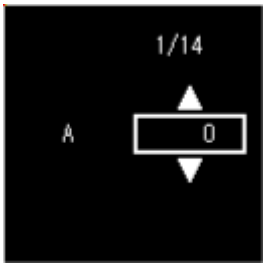
   The confirmation screen will appear.

   Note

   - To print and check the current head position alignment values, select **Print the head alignment value**.
5. Select **Yes**.
6. Press the **OK** button.

   The print head alignment sheet will be printed.
7. When **Did the patterns print correctly?** appears, make sure pattern was printed correctly, and if so, select **Yes**.
8. Check message and select **OK**.

   The input screen for head position alignment values is displayed.



9. Examine first patterns. In column A, find pattern in which streaks are least noticeable, select the number of that pattern, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- If all patterns look different, choose the pattern in which vertical stripes are least noticeable.

  Subtle vertical stripes

  Noticeable vertical stripes

- If all patterns look different, choose the pattern in which horizontal streaks are least noticeable.

  Subtle horizontal streaks

  Noticeable horizontal streaks

10. Repeat these steps until you have finished entering pattern numbers for columns B to N.

11. Check message and press the **OK** button.

    The second set of patterns is printed.

12. Examine the second print head position adjustment pattern, select the number of a pattern in which stripes are least noticeable in column O, and press the **OK** button.

Note

- If all patterns look different, choose the pattern in which vertical stripes are least noticeable.

  Subtle vertical stripes

  Noticeable vertical stripes

13. Repeat these steps until you have finished entering pattern numbers for columns P to X.

14. When completion message appears, select **OK**.

Performing Maintenance Functions from Your Computer (Windows)

- **Opening the Maintenance Tool (Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool)**
- **Cleaning the Print Heads**
- **Adjusting Print Head Position Automatically**
  - Adjusting Print Head Position Manually

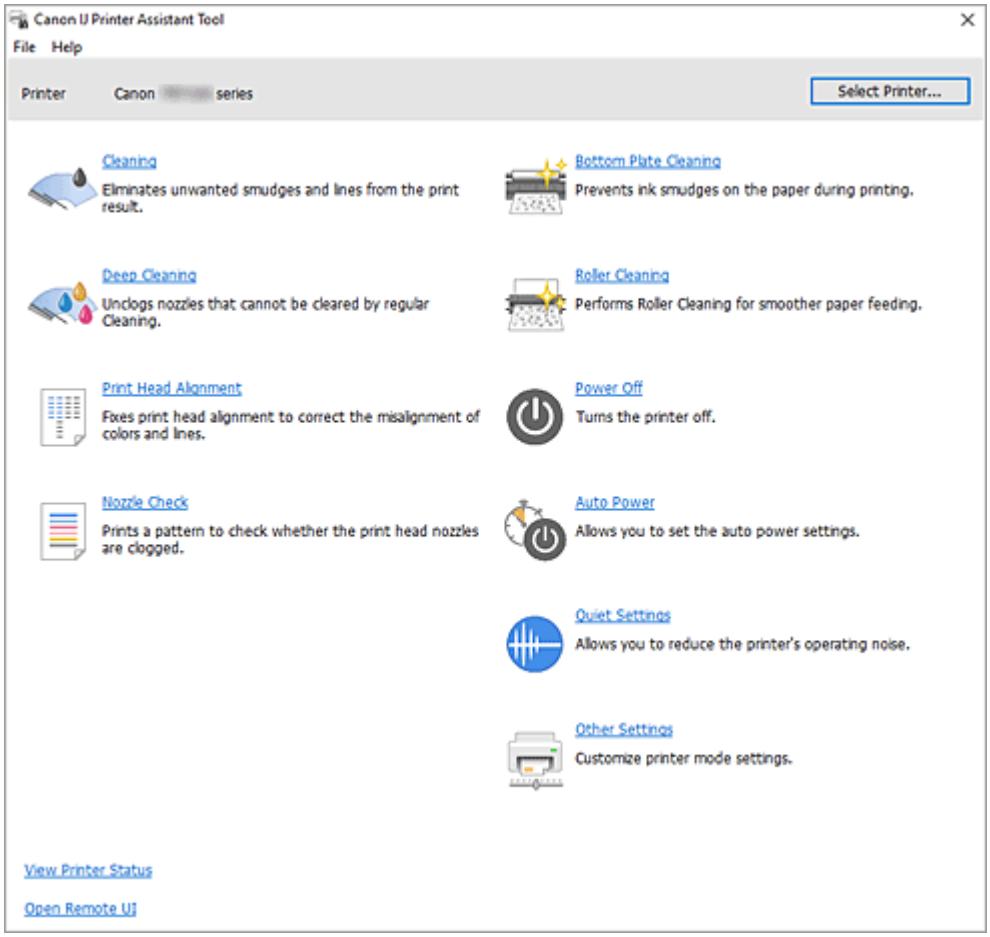
Opening the Maintenance Tool (Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool)

Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool is an application software to perform printer maintenance or change the settings of the printer.

When MP Drivers are installed, Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool is also installed.
To install only Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool, access the Canon web site and download the software.

Note

- For details on installing the Driver, see "Installing the Driver."



How to start the Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool

Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool can be started in the following ways.

- Click **Maintenance and Preferences** icon in the **Maintenance** tab of the printer driver.
- From Windows **Start** menu, click (**All apps**, **Apps**, or **All Programs** ->) **Canon Utilities** -> **IJ Printer Assistant Tool**.

Related Topics

➡ Cleaning the Print Heads

- Adjusting Print Head Position Automatically
- Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern
- Cleaning Inside the Printer
- Cleaning the Paper Feed Rollers
- Managing the Printer Power
- Reducing the Printer Noise
- Changing the Printer Operation Mode

Cleaning the Print Heads

The print head Cleaning and Deep Cleaning functions allow you to clear up clogged print head nozzles. Perform print head Cleaning if printing results are not satisfactory or if a specific color fails to print, even though there is enough ink.

Cleaning

1. Open Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool

2. Click **Cleaning**

   When the **Print Head Cleaning** dialog box opens, select the ink group for which Cleaning is to be performed.

   Click **Initial Check Items** to display the items you need to check before performing Cleaning.

3. Perform Cleaning

   Check that the printer is on and then click **Start**.

   Print Head Cleaning starts.

4. Complete Cleaning

   Click **OK** when the confirmation message is displayed.
   The **Nozzle Check** dialog box will open.

5. Check the results

   To check whether the print quality has improved, click **Print Check Pattern**. To cancel the check process, click **Cancel**.

   If cleaning the head once does not resolve the print head problem, clean it once more.

Important

- **Cleaning** consumes a small amount of ink.
  Cleaning the print head frequently will rapidly deplete your printer's ink supply. Perform Cleaning only when necessary.

Deep Cleaning

Deep Cleaning is more thorough than Cleaning. Perform Deep Cleaning when two **Cleaning** attempts do not resolve the print head problem.

1. Open Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool

2. Click **Deep Cleaning**

When the **Deep Cleaning** dialog box opens, select the ink group for which Deep Cleaning is to be performed.

Click **Initial Check Items** to display the items you need to check before performing Deep Cleaning.

3. Perform Deep Cleaning

Check that the printer is on and then click **Start**.
Click **OK** when the confirmation message appears.

Print head Deep Cleaning starts.

4. Complete Deep Cleaning

Click **OK** when the confirmation message is displayed.
The **Nozzle Check** dialog box will open.

5. Check the results

To check whether the print quality has improved, click **Print Check Pattern**. To cancel the check process, click **Cancel**.

Important

- **Deep Cleaning** consumes a larger amount of ink than **Cleaning**.
  Cleaning the print head frequently will rapidly deplete your printer's ink supply. Perform Deep Cleaning only when necessary.

Related Topic

Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern

Adjusting Print Head Position Automatically

Print Head Alignment corrects the installation positions of the print head and improves misalignment of colors and lines.

This printer supports two head alignment methods: automatic head alignment and manual head alignment. Normally, the printer is set for automatic head alignment, but if the printing results are not satisfactory, such as if the borders are not aligned, perform manual head alignment.

The procedure for performing automatic Print Head Alignment is as follows:

Important

- A pattern will be printed for head alignment. Do not open the scanning unit / cover while printing is in progress.

Print Head Alignment

1. Open Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool

2. Click **Print Head Alignment**

   The **Print Head Alignment** dialog box appears.

3. Load paper in printer

   Load one sheet of A4 size or Letter size plain paper into the cassette.

   Note

   - The number of sheets to be used differs when you select the manual head alignment.

4. Perform head alignment

   Check that the printer is on and then click **Start**.
   Follow the instruction in the message.

   Note

   - Wait until printing ends before performing other operations. Printing takes about 3 to 4 minutes to complete.

Note

- In the **Print Head Alignment** dialog box, click **Print Alignment Value** to print the current settings so that you can check the settings.

Adjusting Print Head Position Manually

Print Head Alignment corrects the installation positions of the print head and improves misalignment of colors and lines.

This printer supports two head alignment methods: automatic head alignment and manual head alignment. Normally, the printer is set for automatic head alignment, but if the printing results are not satisfactory, such as if the borders are not aligned, perform manual head alignment.

The procedure for performing manual Print Head Alignment is as follows:

Important

- Printing is required for adjusting the position of the print head. Do not open the scanning unit / cover while printing is in progress; otherwise, printing will stop.

Print Head Alignment

1. Open Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool

2. Check that the printer power is on, and then click **Other Settings**

   The **Other Settings** dialog box opens.

   Note

   - If the printer is off or if communication between the printer and the computer is disabled, an error message may appear because the computer cannot collect the printer status.
     If this happens, click **OK** to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.

3. Switch head alignment to manual

   Check the **Align heads manually** check box.

4. Apply the settings

   Click **OK** and when the confirmation message appears, click **OK**.

5. Click **Print Head Alignment**

   The **Print Head Alignment** dialog box opens.

6. Load paper in printer

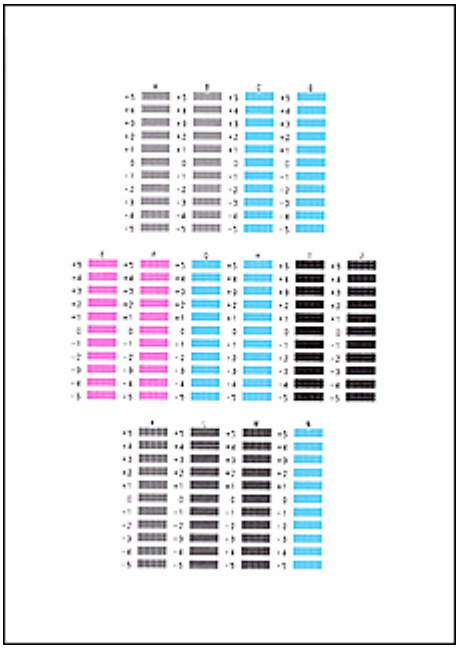
   Load two sheets of A4 size or Letter size plain paper into the cassette.

7. Perform head alignment

   Click **Start**.
   Follow the instruction in the message.

8. Check printed pattern

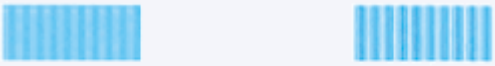
In each entry field, enter the number of the pattern with the least prominent streaks or stripes from among the printed patterns.



After completing the entries, click **OK**.

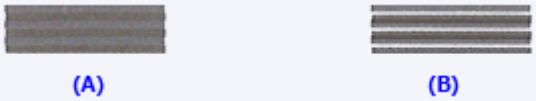
Note

- If the patterns are not uniform, select the pattern with the least prominent vertical streaks.



(A) Less prominent vertical streaks
(B) More prominent vertical streaks

- If the patterns are not uniform, select the pattern with the least prominent horizontal stripes.



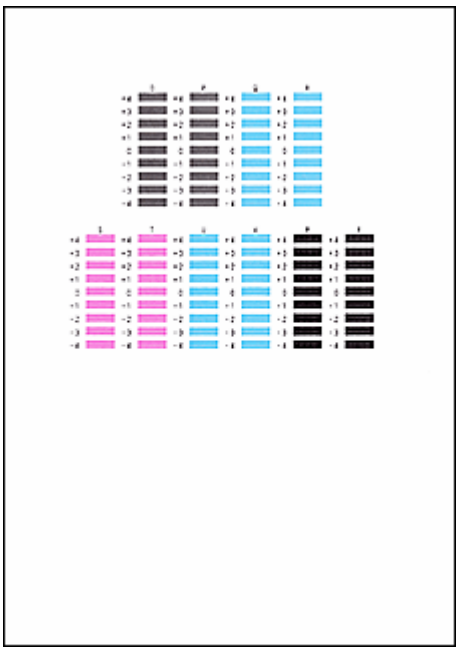
(A) Less prominent horizontal stripes
(B) More prominent horizontal stripes

9. Check the displayed message and click **OK**

The second pattern is printed.

10. Check printed patterns

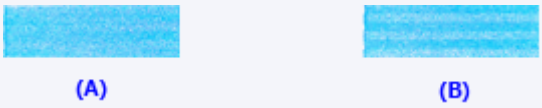
In each entry field, enter the number of the pattern with the least prominent stripes or streaks from among the printed patterns.



After completing the entries, click **OK**.

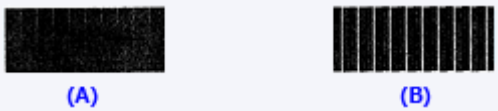
Note

- If the patterns are not uniform, select the pattern with the least prominent horizontal stripes.



(A) Less prominent horizontal stripes
(B) More prominent horizontal stripes

- If the patterns are not uniform, select the pattern with the least prominent vertical streaks.



(A) Less prominent vertical streaks
(B) More prominent vertical streaks

11. Complete head position adjustment

Click **OK**.
The adjustment of the head position is complete.

Note

- To print and check the current setting, open the **Print Head Alignment** dialog box, and click **Print Alignment Value**.

Performing Maintenance Functions from Your Computer (macOS)

- Opening Remote UI for Maintenance
- Cleaning the Print Heads
- Adjusting Print Head Position
- Checking Ink Status from Your Computer

Opening Remote UI for Maintenance

You can perform maintenance of printer and change the settings from a Remote UI.
The following is the procedure to open a Remote UI.

1. Open **System Settings**, and select **Printers & Scanners**
2. Select your model from the printer list, and click **Options & Supplies...**
3. Click **Show Printer Webpage...** in **General** tab

   Remote UI starts.

   Note

   - The password may have to be entered after Remote UI starts. In such a case, enter the password and click **OK**. In case you do not know the password, see "Password and Cookie."

Related Topics

- Performing Maintenance Functions from Your Computer (macOS)
- Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer (macOS)

Cleaning the Print Heads

The print head Cleaning and Deep Cleaning functions allow you to clear up clogged print head nozzles. Perform print head Cleaning if printing results are not satisfactory or if a specific color fails to print, even though there is enough ink.

Cleaning

1. Select **Utilities** from Remote UI

2. Click **Cleaning**

   Before performing Cleaning, check the following items:

   Check whether the printer is on and open the printer's cover.
   Check the following items for each ink. Then, if necessary, perform **Cleaning**.

   - Is there ink remaining?
   - Did you push in the ink completely until you heard a clicking sound?
   - If the orange tape is there, has it been peeled off completely?
     Any remaining tape will hinder ink output.
   - Did you install the inks in their correct positions?

3. Perform Cleaning

   Click **Yes**.

   Print head Cleaning starts.

4. Complete Cleaning

   Next, the message for Nozzle Check pattern printing is displayed.

5. Check the results

   To check whether the print quality has improved, click **Yes**. To cancel the check process, click **No**.

   If cleaning the head once does not resolve the print head problem, clean it once more.

Important

- **Cleaning** consumes a small amount of ink.
  Cleaning the print head frequently will rapidly deplete your printer's ink supply. Perform Cleaning only when necessary.

Deep Cleaning

Deep Cleaning is more thorough than Cleaning. Perform Deep Cleaning when two **Cleaning** attempts do not resolve the print head problem.

1. Select **Utilities** from Remote UI

2. Click **Deep Cleaning**

   Before performing Deep Cleaning, check the following items:

   Check whether the printer is on and open the printer's cover.
   Check the following items for each ink. Then, if necessary, perform **Deep Cleaning**.

   - Is there ink remaining?
   - Did you push in the ink completely until you heard a clicking sound?
   - If the orange tape is there, has it been peeled off completely?
     Any remaining tape will hinder ink output.
   - Did you install the inks in their correct positions?

3. Perform Deep Cleaning

   Click **Yes**.

   Print head Deep Cleaning starts.

4. Complete Deep Cleaning

   Next, the message for Nozzle Check pattern printing is displayed.

5. Check the results

   To check whether the print quality has improved, click **Yes**. To cancel the check process, click **No**.

Important

- **Deep Cleaning** consumes a larger amount of ink than **Cleaning**.
  Cleaning the print head frequently will rapidly deplete your printer's ink supply. Perform Deep Cleaning only when necessary.

Related Topic

- Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern

Adjusting Print Head Position

Any error in the print head installation position can cause color and line shifts. Adjusting the print head position improves print results.

Print Head Alignment - Auto

1. Select **Utilities** from Remote UI

2. Click **Print Head Alignment - Auto**

   A message appears.

3. Load paper in printer

   Load one sheet of A4 size or Letter size plain paper into the cassette.

4. Run head position adjustment

   Check that the printer power is on, and then click **Yes**.
   Head alignment starts. Proceed with the operations in accordance with the messages on the screen.

   Important

   - Do not open the scanning unit / cover while printing is in progress; otherwise, printing will stop.

Note

- You can print and check the current settings by clicking on **Print the head alignment value**.

Checking Ink Status from Your Computer

You can check the detailed information such as the remaining ink level and the ink model numbers of your model.

If you select **Printer status** from Remote UI, the ink status appears as an illustration.

Estimated ink levels

You can check the types and levels of ink.
When ink levels are running low or an error occurs because there is no ink, a notification icon will appear.

Ink model number

You can look up the correct ink model numbers for your printer.

Note

- To check the ink status, you can also display **Printer Info** in the print dialog and select **Supply Levels**.

Cleaning

- Cleaning Exterior Surfaces
- Cleaning Platen and Document Cover
- Cleaning Paper Feed Rollers
- Cleaning Inside the Printer (Bottom Plate Cleaning)
- Cleaning Cassette Pads

Cleaning Paper Feed Rollers

If a paper feed roller is dirty or paper powder is attached to it, paper may not be fed properly. In this case, perform Roller Cleaning. Cleaning will cause wear on rollers, so perform this only when necessary.

You need to prepare: three sheets of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper

1. Check that printer is turned on.
2. Select **Maintenance** on the HOME screen.

   ➡ LCD and Operation Panel
3. Select **Roller cleaning**.

   The confirmation screen will appear.
4. Select **Yes**.
5. Remove any paper from the cassette, then push it back.
6. Select **OK**.

   The paper feed rollers will rotate as they are cleaned without paper.
7. Make sure that the paper feed roller has stopped rotating, then follow the message to load the three sheets of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper in the cassette.

   ➡ Loading Plain Paper
8. Select **OK**.

   The printer starts cleaning. The cleaning will be complete when the paper is ejected.
9. When the completion message appears, select **OK**.

If the problem is not resolved after cleaning, contact Canon to request a repair.

Cleaning Inside the Printer (Bottom Plate Cleaning)

Remove stains from the inside of the printer. If the inside of the printer becomes dirty, printed paper may get dirty, so we recommend performing cleaning regularly.

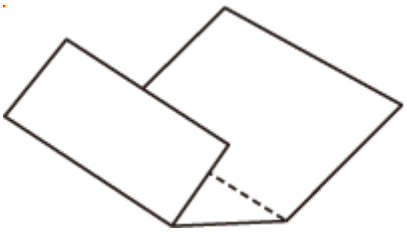
You need to prepare: a sheet of A4 sized plain paper*

* Be sure to use a new piece of paper.

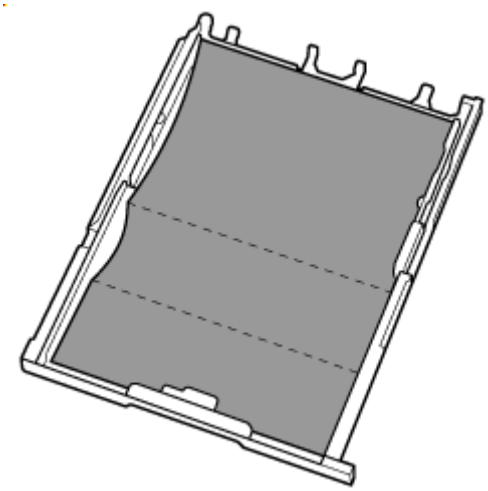
1. Check that printer is turned on.
2. Select **Maintenance** on the HOME screen.

   ➡ LCD and Operation Panel
3. Select **Bottom plate cleaning**.

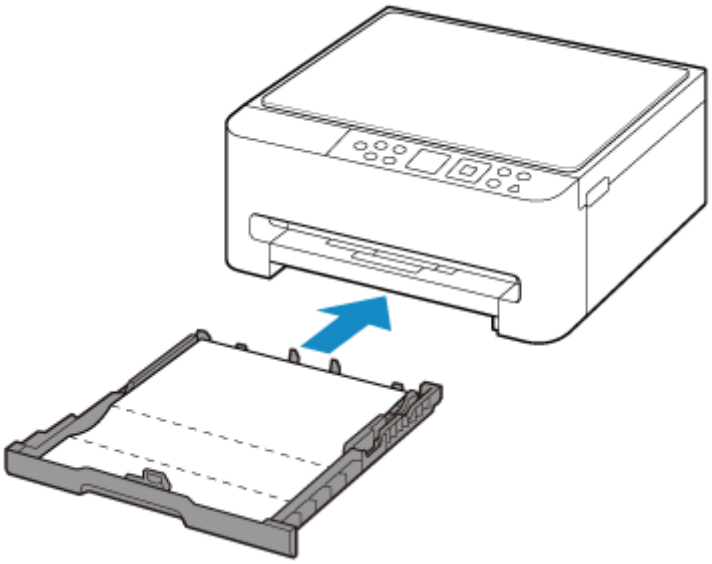
   The confirmation screen will appear.
4. Select **Yes**.
5. Follow the message to remove any paper from the cassette, then select **OK**.
6. Fold a single sheet of A4 plain paper in half widthwise, then unfold the paper.
7. Fold one side of the opened paper in another half, aligning the edge with the center crease, unfold the paper, then select **OK**.



8. Load only this sheet of paper in the cassette with the ridges of the creases facing up and the edge of the half with no crease facing to the far side.



9. Insert cassette into printer.



10. Select **OK**.

    The paper cleans the inside of the printer as it feeds through the printer.

    Check the folded parts of the ejected paper. If they are smudged with ink, perform Bottom Plate Cleaning again.

11. When the completion message appears, select **OK**.

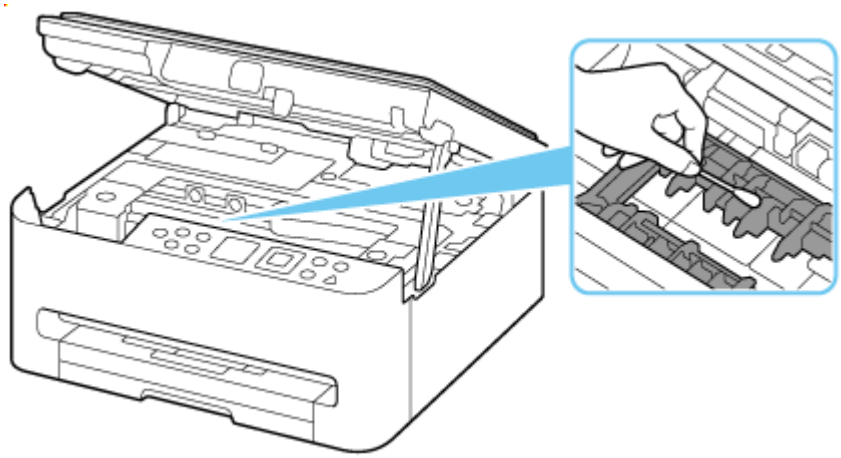
Note

- When performing Bottom Plate Cleaning again, be sure to use a new piece of paper.

If the problem is not resolved after performing cleaning again, the protrusions inside the printer may be stained. Wipe off any ink from the protrusions using a cotton swab or the like.

Important

- Be sure to turn off the power and unplug the power cord before cleaning the printer.



Changing Settings

- Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer (Windows)
- Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer (macOS)
- Changing Settings from Operation Panel
- Handling Printer Configuration Using the Web Browser

Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer (Windows)

- Changing the Print Options
- Setting the Ink to be Used
- Managing the Printer Power
- Changing the Printer Operation Mode

Changing the Print Options

You can change the detailed printer driver settings for print data that is sent from an application software.

Specify this option if you encounter print failures such as part of an image data being cut off.

1. Open the printer driver setup window
2. Click **Print Options...** on the **Page Setup** tab

   The **Print Options** dialog box opens.
3. Change the individual settings

   If necessary, change the setting of each item, and then click **OK**.

   The **Page Setup** tab is displayed again.

Setting the Ink to be Used

This feature enables you to specify the most appropriate FINE cartridge among installed FINE cartridges according to an intended use.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Click **Print Options...** on the **Page Setup** tab

   The **Print Options** dialog box appears.

3. Select the FINE cartridge to be used from **Print With**

   Select the FINE cartridge to be used for printing and click **OK**.

4. Click **OK** on the **Page Setup** tab

   When you perform printing, the specified FINE cartridge will be used.

Important

- When the following settings are specified, **Black Only** does not function because the printer uses the color FINE cartridge to print documents.
  - Other than **Plain Paper**, **Envelope**, **Ink Jet Hagaki (A)**, **Hagaki K (A)**, **Hagaki (A)**, or **Hagaki** is selected for **Media Type** on the **Media/Quality** tab
  - A checkmark is added to **Borderless Printing** on the **Page Setup** tab
- Do not detach the FINE cartridge that is not in use. Printing cannot be performed while either FINE cartridge is detached.

Managing the Printer Power

This function allows you to manage the printer power from the Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool.

Power Off

The **Power Off** function turns off the printer. When you use this function, you will not be able to turn the printer on from the Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool.

1. Open Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool

2. Perform power off

   Click **Power Off**. When the confirmation message appears, click **OK**.

   The printer power switches off.

Auto Power

Auto Power allows you to set **Auto Power On** and **Auto Power Off**.
The **Auto Power On** function automatically turns on the printer when data is received.
The **Auto Power Off** function automatically turns off the printer when there are no operations from the printer driver or the printer for a specified period of time.

1. Open the Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool

2. Check that the printer is on and then click **Auto Power**

   The **Auto Power Settings** dialog box will open.

   Note

   - If the printer is off or if communication between the printer and the computer is disabled, an error message may appear because the computer cannot collect the printer status.
     If this happens, click **OK** to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.

3. If necessary, complete the following settings:

   Auto Power On

   Select the auto-power on setting.
   Select **Off** to prevent the auto-power on feature from functioning.
   Check that the printer is on before configuration.
   Select **On** to turn the printer on automatically when print data is sent to it.

Auto Power Off

Specify the time from the list. When this time lapses without any operations from the printer driver or the printer, the printer is turned off automatically.

Follow the **No LAN/USB Connection** settings if all the following conditions are met.

- All **LAN** settings in the printer settings are disabled
- There is no USB connection to a PC

Otherwise, follow the **LAN/USB Connection** settings.

Note

- Enabling auto power on, disabling auto power off, or extending the time for auto power off will increase power consumption.

4. Apply the settings

Click **OK**. When the confirmation message appears, click **OK**.

The setting is enabled after this. When you want to disable this function, select **Off** from the list according to the same procedure.

Note

- When the printer is turned off, the Canon IJ Status Monitor message varies depending on the **Auto Power On** setting.
  When the setting is **On**, "Printer is standing by" is displayed. When the setting is **Off**, "Cannot communicate with printer" is displayed.

Changing the Printer Operation Mode

If necessary, switch between various modes of printer operation.
If you want to change printer settings, open one of the following two screens, and configure settings.

- **Custom Settings** in the **Maintenance** Tab
- **Other Settings** in Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool

For functions related to print settings, go to **Custom Settings** in the **Maintenance** Tab. For other settings, go to **Other Settings** in Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool.

Custom Settings in the Maintenance Tab

1. Open the **Maintenance** Tab

2. Check that the printer power is on, and click **Custom Settings**

   The **Custom Settings** dialog box opens.

   Note

   - If the printer is off or if communication between the printer and the computer is disabled, an error message may appear because the computer cannot collect the printer status.
     If this happens, click **OK** to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.

3. Configure settings

   If necessary, switch between various modes of printer operation.

4. Apply the settings

   Click **OK** and when the confirmation message appears, click **OK**.

   The printer operates with the modified settings hereafter.

Other Settings in Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool

1. Open the Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool

2. Check that the printer is on and then click **Other Settings**

   The **Other Settings** dialog box opens.

   Note

   - If the printer is off or if communication between the printer and the computer is disabled, an error message may appear because the computer cannot collect the printer status.
     If this happens, click **OK** to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.

3. Configure settings

   If necessary, switch between various modes of printer operation.

4. Apply the settings

Click **OK** and when the confirmation message appears, click **OK**.

The printer operates with the modified settings hereafter.

Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer (macOS)

- Managing the Printer Power
- Changing the Printer Operation Mode

Managing the Printer Power

Printer power supply is operated from Remote UI.

Energy saving settings

Energy saving settings allow you to set Auto power off and Auto power on.

Auto power off is the function wherein the printer automatically turns itself off, when data is not sent or the printer remains inactive for a certain period.
The Auto power on function automatically turns on the printer when data is received.

1. Selecting **Printer settings** from Remote UI

2. Click **Energy saving settings**

3. Complete the following settings:

   Auto power off (LAN/USB connection) / Auto power off (no LAN/USB connection)
   Specify the time from the list. Printer automatically turns itself off, when data is not sent within the specified time or the printer has remained inactive.
   If all of the following conditions are met, the settings in **Auto power off (no LAN/USB connection)** will be followed.
   - All **LAN** settings in the printer settings are disabled
   - There is no USB connection to a PC

   Otherwise, the settings in **Auto power off (LAN/USB connection)** will be followed.

   Auto power on
   When you check this check box, the printer automatically turns itself on when data is sent.

   Note

   - Disabling or extending the time for auto power off or enabling auto power on will increase power consumption.

4. Apply the settings

   Click **OK**.
   The printer will operate with the changed settings hereafter.

Changing the Printer Operation Mode

If necessary, switch between various modes of printer operation.

1. Check whether the printer is on and select **Printer settings** from Remote UI

2. Change settings

   The displayed settings may vary depending on your printer model. Change the displayed settings as needed.

   Print settings - Prevent paper abrasion

   The printer can increase the gap between the print head and the paper during high-density printing to prevent paper abrasion.
   Check this check box to prevent paper abrasion.

   Custom settings - Detect paper setting mismatch
   Custom settings - Detect paper setting mismatch (AirPrint) / Detect paper setting mismatch (Other)

   If the check box is deselected, at the time of printing from PC, you can continue to print without the message display even if the paper settings set in the print dialog differs from the paper information configured on the printer.

   Ink drying wait time

   You can set the length of the printer rest time until printing of the next page begins. The wait time becomes longer as the value set in the list increases, and shorter as the value decreases.
   If the paper gets stained because the next page is ejected before the ink on the printed page dries, increase the ink drying wait time.

3. Apply the settings

   Click **OK**.

   The printer operates with the modified settings hereafter.

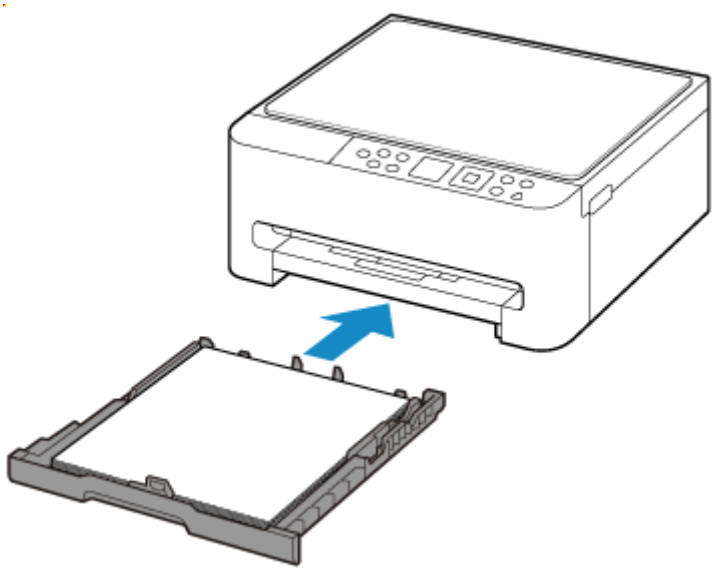
Changing Settings from Operation Panel

- Paper Settings
- Changing Settings from Operation Panel
- Setting Items on Operation Panel
- Security settings
- Print settings
- Power Control settings
- LAN settings
- Smartphone photo print settings
- Other device settings
- Language selection
- Firmware update
- Reset settings
- Feed settings
- Web service setup
- ECO settings
- Quiet setting
- System information
- Checking the Total Number of Uses of Printer

Paper Settings

By registering the paper size and the media type, the message is displayed before printing starts when the paper size or the media type of the loaded paper differs from the paper settings.

After loading paper



The screen to register the cassette paper information is displayed.

If the page size on the LCD matches the size of the paper loaded in the cassette, select **OK**.

If not, select **Change** to change the setting in accordance with the size of the loaded paper.

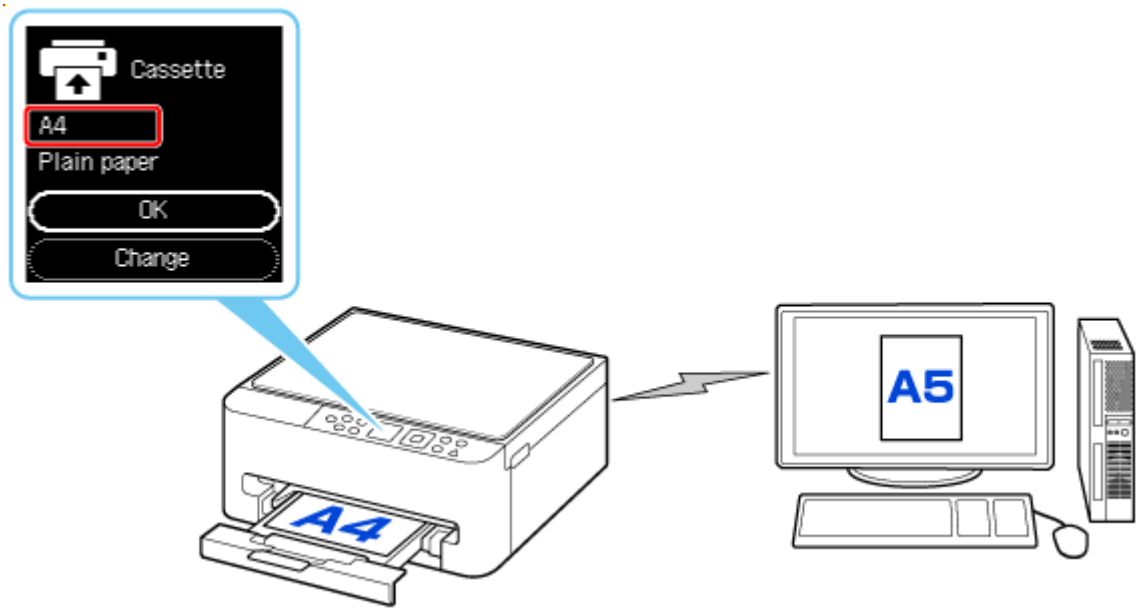
Note

- For more on the proper combination of paper settings you can specify by the printer driver (Windows) or on the LCD:
  - Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Media Type)
  - Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Paper Size)

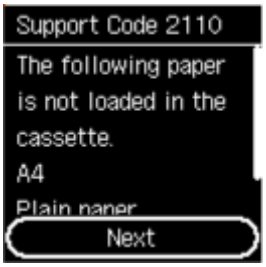
When the paper settings for printing/copying are different from the paper information registered to the printer

Ex:

- Paper settings for printing/copying: A5
- Paper information registered to the printer: A4



When you start printing/copying, a message is displayed.



Check the message and select **Next**, and then choose one of the following.

Print on set paper

Select if you want to print/copy on the paper loaded without changing the paper settings.

For example, when the paper setting for printing/copying is A5 and the paper information registered to the printer is A4, the printer starts printing/copying on the paper loaded in the cassette without changing the paper size setting for printing/copying.

Replace paper

Select if you want to print after replacing the paper of the cassette.

For example, when the paper size setting for printing/copying is A5 and the paper information registered to the printer is A4, you load A5 sized paper in the cassette before you start printing/copying.

The paper information registration screen is displayed after replacing the paper. Register the paper information according to the paper that you loaded.

Cancel print

Cancels printing.

Select when you change the paper settings specified for printing/copying. Change the paper settings and try printing/copying again.

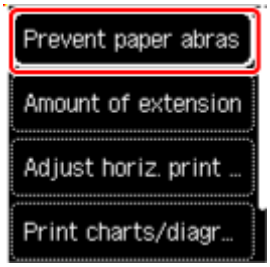
Changing Settings from Operation Panel

This section describes the procedure to change the settings, taking the steps to specify prevent abrasion as an example.

1. Check that printer is turned on.
2. Select **Settings** on the HOME screen.

   ➡ LCD and Operation Panel
3. Select **Device settings**.
4. Select a setting item to adjust.

   The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.
5. Select a setting item.

6. Select a setting to specify.

For more on setting items on the operation panel:

➡ Setting Items on Operation Panel

Setting Items on Operation Panel

Items for Printer

- Other device settings
- Language selection
- Web service setup
- ECO settings
- Quiet setting

Items for Paper/Printing

- Print settings
- Smartphone photo print settings
- Feed settings

Items for Maintenance/Management

- Security settings
- LAN settings
- Power Control settings
- Firmware update
- Reset settings
- System information
- Checking the Total Number of Uses of Printer

Security settings

Select this setting item from **Device settings** in **Settings**.

- **Recommended security settings**

  Make the security settings that best match your usage environment. Check the Security Settings Navigator for details on each setting.

  ➡ Set Up/Manage Security

- **Lockout settings**

  Set whether to lock password input for a period of time after multiple incorrect attempts.

  - **Enable/disable lockout**

    Enable or disable the lockout setting.

  - **Lockout threshold (times)**

    Set the number of attempts before input is locked.

  - **Lockout period**

    Set the length of time to lock input for.

- **Use of Remote UI**

  Set when restricting use of the Remote UI.

- **IPsec settings**

  Selecting **Enable** allows you to specify the IPsec security.

Print settings

Select this setting item from **Device settings** in **Settings**.

- **Prevent paper abrasion**

  Use this setting only if the print surface becomes smudged.

  Important

  - Be sure to set this back to **OFF** after printing since it may result in lower printing speed or lower print quality.

- **Amount of extension**

  Selects the amount of image that extends off the paper when printing in borderless (full).

  When performing Borderless Printing, slight cropping may occur at the edges since the printed image is enlarged to fill the whole page. You can change the width to be cropped from the borders of the original image as needed.

  Important

  - Settings will become ineffective in the following situations:
    - Printing from a standard form.

  Note

  - When performing settings from application software or the printer driver, these settings will be prioritized.
  - If printouts contain margins even though you are printing in Borderless, specifying **Extended amount: Large** for this setting may help solve the problem.

- **Adjust horiz. print position**

  Adjusts the print position when the left/right margins are not aligned.

  You can adjust the left/right margins in increments of 0.004 in. (0.1 mm) between -0.12 in. (-3 mm) and +0.12 in. (+3 mm) centered on the horizontal center of the paper.

  Important

  - When using A4/Letter sized paper, the amount of adjustment that can be made is limited. You cannot make adjustments greater than this limit.

- **Print charts/diagrams vividly**

  Use this setting when you want to print charts and diagrams in documents vividly on plain paper.

  This feature gives preference to printer driver settings.

  When you want to give preference to printer settings, select **Use Printer Settings** in the **Print charts and diagrams in documents more vividly (plain paper)** in **Print Options** dialog box in the printer driver settings below.

  ➡ Page Setup Tab Description

Note

- This feature will be implemented with the following settings.
  - Plain paper
  - Color printing
  - Borderless printing OFF
  - Size is a template size or a user-defined size within the range of a template size

  * The feature may not be implemented even when the above settings are selected, depending on other setting details.
- Processing may differ depending on settings and may result in the same data having different tones. Turn this setting **OFF** if you want to avoid differences in tone.

- **Reduce plain paper ink smudges**

  With some plain paper, the printed surface may smudge because the ink has difficulty fusing. You can set the required level of smudge reduction.

Note

- This feature may cause the printing speed to be slower or the image quality to be reduced.
- This feature does not function if a paper type other than plain paper is selected.

Power Control settings

Select this setting item from **Device settings** in **Settings**.

Allows you to turn on/off the printer automatically to save electricity.

Note

- If this setting is changed, power consumption may increase.

- **Auto power off settings**

  Specifies the length of time to turn off the printer automatically when no operation is made or no printing data is sent to the printer.

- **Auto power on settings**

  Selecting **ON** enables the printer to turn on automatically when a scanning command from a computer or printing data is sent to the printer.

LAN settings

Select this setting item from **Settings**.

- Wi-Fi
- Wireless Direct

- **Advanced**

  For details on each setting item:

  - Advanced

To print the network settings, select **Print details** and select **Yes**.

- Printing Network Settings

Important

- The network settings printout contains important information about your network. Handle it with care.

Wi-Fi

- **Show setting info**

  The network settings information of the printer appears when it is connected by Wi-Fi. (Some setting items are not displayed depending on the printer settings.)

Items	Setting
Connection	Enabled (connected)/Enabled (disconnected)/Disable
Network name (SSID)	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Frequency	2.4 GHz/5 GHz
Wi-Fi security	Disable/WPA-PSK(AES)/WPA2-PSK(AES)/WPA3-SAE(AES)
Signal strength (%)	XXX
IPv4 address	XXX. XXX. XXX. XXX
IPv4 subnet mask	XXX. XXX. XXX. XXX
IPv4 default gateway	XXX. XXX. XXX. XXX
IPv6 link-local address	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
MAC address (Wi-Fi)	XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX
Printer name	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Bonjour service name	XXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXX

("XX" represents alphanumeric characters.)

- **Advanced mode**

  Enables/disables Wi-Fi.

- **Wi-Fi setup**

  Selects the setup method for Wi-Fi connection.

  - **Easy wireless connect**

    Select if you specify the settings of the access point information to the printer directly from a device (e.g. smartphone, or tablet) without operating the wireless router. Follow the on-screen instructions of the connecting device for the setup procedure.

  - **Manual connect**

    Select when you perform settings for Wi-Fi manually using the operation panel of the printer.

  - **WPS (Push button method)**

    Select when you perform settings for Wi-Fi using a wireless router supporting a Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS) push button method. Follow the on-screen instructions during setup.

  - **Other connection types**

    - **WPS (PIN code method)**

      Select when you perform settings for Wi-Fi using a wireless router supporting a Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS) PIN code method. Follow the on-screen instructions during setup.

Wireless Direct

- **Show setting info**

  The network settings information of the printer appears when it is connected by the wireless direct. (Some setting items are not displayed depending on the printer settings.)

Items	Setting
Connection	Enable/Disable
Network name(SSID)	DIRECT-XXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Password	XXXXXXXXXX
Frequency	2.4 GHz/5 GHz
Wi-Fi security	WPA2-PSK(AES)/Disable
No. of devices connected now	XX/XX
IPv4 address	XXX. XXX. XXX. XXX
IPv4 subnet mask	XXX. XXX. XXX. XXX
IPv4 default gateway	XXX. XXX. XXX. XXX
IPv6 link-local address	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
MAC address (Wi-Fi)	XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX
Printer name	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

Bonjour service name	XXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXX

("XX" represents alphanumeric characters.)

- **Connect to smartphone**

  Enables to connect the smartphone to the printer by reading the QR code displayed on the LCD with the smartphone, or also by manually obtaining the network name and password.

- **Advanced mode**

  Enables/disables Wireless Direct.

- **Change network name (SSID)**

  Changes the identifier (SSID/the printer's name displayed on a Wi-Fi Direct compatible device) for Wireless Direct.

- **Change password**

  Changes the password for Wireless Direct.

- **Confirm connection request**

  Selecting **ON** displays the confirmation screen when a Wi-Fi Direct compatible device is connecting the printer.

- **2.4GHz/5GHz switch**

  Select the frequency of Wireless Direct.

Advanced

- **Set printer name**

  Specifies the printer name. You can use up to 15 characters for the name.

  Note

  - You cannot use the same printer name as that already used for other LAN connected devices.
  - You cannot use a hyphen for the initial or last character of the printer name.

- **TCP/IP settings**

  Performs IPv4 or IPv6 setting.

- **WSD setting**

  Setting items when you use WSD (one of the network protocols supported in Windows).

  - **Enable/disable WSD**

    Selects whether WSD is enabled or disabled.

    Note

    - When this setting is enabled, the printer icon is displayed on the Network Explorer in Windows.

- **Optimize inbound WSD**

  Selecting **Enable** allows you to receive the WSD printing data faster.

- **WSD scan from this device**

  Selecting **Enable** allows you to transfer the scanned data to the computer using WSD. To transfer the scanned data, press **Color** button.

  Note

  - When you forward the scanned data to the computer searched using WSD, you cannot select the document type.

- **Timeout setting**

  Specifies the timeout length.

- **Bonjour settings**

  Setting items when you use Bonjour.

  - **Enable/disable Bonjour**

    Selecting **Enable** allows you to use Bonjour to perform the network settings.

  - **Service name**

    Specifies the Bonjour service name. You can use up to 48 characters for the name.

    Note

    - You cannot use the same service name as that already used for other LAN connected devices.

- **LPD settings**

  Enables/disables the LPD setting.

- **RAW settings**

  Enables/disables RAW printing.

- **LLMNR settings**

  Enables/disables LLMNR (Link-Local Multicast Name Resolution). Selecting **Enable** allows the printer to detect printer's IP address from the printer name without a DNS server.

- **IPP settings**

  Selecting **Enable** allows you to print via the network with the IPP protocol.

- **Wi-Fi DRX setting**

  Selecting **Enable** allows you to activate discontinuous reception when using Wi-Fi (discontinuous reception).

  Note

  - Depending on the Wi-Fi router used, discontinuous reception may not be activated even though **Enable** is selected.

- Discontinuous reception is enabled only while the printer is on standby. (The LCD is in the screen saver mode.)

Other device settings

Select this setting item from **Device settings** in **Settings**.

- **Key repeat**

  Selecting **ON** lets you quickly display candidate numbers or characters by holding down the ▲▼ button during character entry.

- **Original removal reminder**

  Selects whether the printer will display the reminder screen in case you forget to remove the original from the platen after scanning.

  Important

  - Depending on the type of original or the state of the document cover, forgetting to remove the original may not be detected.

- **Wi-Fi pairing settings**

  In order to connect Canon PRINT, multiple configurations will be performed.

  - **Enable/disable pairing**

    Set the printer's Wi-Fi pairing function to enable or disable.

  - **Allow/block additional pairing**

    On another function permit or prohibit Canon PRINT pairing.

  - **Delete paired devices**

    Cancel all Canon PRINT pairing.

- **Keyboard layout**

  Select the keyboard layout from the following three types.

  - **QWERTY**
  - **QWERTZ**
  - **AZERTY**

Language selection

Select this setting item from **Device settings** in **Settings**.

Changes the language for the messages and menus on the LCD.

Japanese / English / German / French / Italian / Spanish / Portuguese / Dutch / Danish / Norwegian / Swedish / Finnish / Russian / Ukrainian / Polish / Czech / Slovene / Hungarian / Slovak / Croatian / Romanian / Bulgarian / Turkish / Greek / Estonian / Latvian / Lithuanian / Simplified Chinese / Korean / Traditional Chinese / Indonesian / Vietnamese

Firmware update

Select this setting item from **Device settings** in **Settings**.

You can update the firmware of the printer, check the firmware version, or perform settings of a notification screen, a DNS server and a proxy server.

Important

- When you use this function, make sure the printer is connected to the Internet.
- Do not turn off the power of a printer while firmware is being updated.

- **Install update**

  Performs the firmware update of the printer. If you select **Yes**, the firmware update starts. Follow the on-screen instructions to perform update.

- **Check current version**

  You can check the current firmware version.

- **Update notification setting**

  You can set the printer to display the firmware update information on the LCD when the firmware update is available.

  When **Idle/Power off** is selected, the printer informs you of the update during idle and the update information also appears when you press the **ON** button.

- **Auto update settings**

  Select **ON** to automatically update the firmware to the latest version.

- **DNS server setup**

  Performs settings for a DNS server. Select **Auto setup** or **Manual setup**. If you select **Manual setup**, follow the display on the LCD to perform settings.

- **Proxy server setup**

  Performs settings for a proxy server. Follow the display on the LCD to perform settings.

Reset settings

Select this setting item from **Device settings** in **Settings**.

You can set the settings back to the default.

- **Web service setup only**

  Sets the Web service settings back to the default.

- **LAN settings only**

  Sets the LAN settings back to the default.

- **Settings only**

  Returns the settings such as the paper size, media type, or other setting items back to the default.

- **Reset all**

  Sets all settings you made to the printer back to the default. The administrator password specified for the printer is initialized.

Note

- You cannot set the following setting items back to the default:
  - The language displayed on the LCD
  - The current position of the print head
  - The cumulative usage count of copy, scan, etc. registered in **Print usage statistics**.
  - CSR (Certificate Signing Request) for encryption method (SSL/TLS) setting

Feed settings

Select this setting item from **Settings**.

Note

- By registering the paper size and the media type, the message can be displayed before printing starts when the paper size or the media type of the loaded paper differs from the paper settings.

  ➡ Paper Settings

- **Cassette paper settings**

  Registers the paper size and the media type you load in the cassette.

- **Detect paper width**

  If you select **Enable**, the printer detects the paper replacement. A screen for confirming the setting of paper is displayed.

Note

- A screen for confirming the setting of paper is not displayed if you select **Disable**. Set the size and type of paper properly in **Cassette paper settings** when making prints.
- For AirPrint of iOS/iPadOS, paper may be printed based on the paper size set during paper loading. It is recommended to set to **Enable** when making prints using an AirPrint function.

- **Detect paper setting mismatch**

  If you select **Enable**, the printer detects whether the paper size and the media type are identical with those registered in **Feed settings**. If printing starts with the settings that do not match, an error message is displayed on the LCD.

Note

- When **Disable** is selected, the settings in **Feed settings** is disabled.

Web service setup

Select this item from **Settings**.

- **Web service connection setup**

  The following setting items are available.

  - **Cloud Printing Center setup**

    Registers/Deletes the printer to/from Canon Cloud Printing Center and sets the history saving.

  - **Check Web service setup**

    Make sure whether the printer is registered to Canon Cloud Printing Center.

- **Issue registration code**

  In order to link the web service and printer, obtain the registration code from the service origin.

- **DNS server setup**

  Performs settings for a DNS server. Select **Auto setup** or **Manual setup**. If you select **Manual setup**, follow the display on the LCD to perform settings.

- **Proxy server setup**

  Performs settings for a proxy server. Follow the display on the LCD to perform settings.

ECO settings

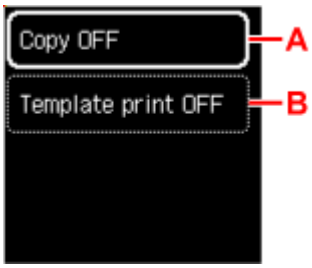
This setting allows you to use automatic duplex printing as a default to save paper and to turn on/off the printer automatically to save electricity.

- Using Duplex Printing
- Automatically Turning the Power of the Printer On/Off

Using Duplex Printing

Follow the procedure below to use duplex printing.

1. Check that printer is turned on.
2. Select **Settings** on the HOME screen.
   - LCD and Operation Panel
3. Select **ECO settings**.
4. Select **Two-sided print settings**.
5. Specify settings as necessary.



A: Select two-sided copying as a default.

B: Select two-sided printing of template forms on the printer as a default.

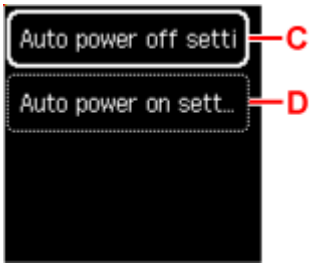
Automatically Turning the Power of the Printer On/Off

Follow the procedure below to configure the power management settings.

1. Check that printer is turned on.
2. Select **Settings** on the HOME screen.
   - LCD and Operation Panel
3. Select **ECO settings**.
4. Select **PwrControl settings**.

5. Select **OK**.

6. Specify settings as necessary.



C: Specify the length of time to turn the printer off automatically when no operation is made or no printing data is sent to the printer.

D: Selecting **ON** enables the printer to turn on automatically when a scanning command from a computer or printing data is sent to the printer.

Note

- If this setting is changed, power consumption may increase.

Quiet setting

Enables this function on the printer if you want to reduce the operating noise, such as when printing at night.

1. Check that printer is turned on.
2. Select **Settings** on the HOME screen.
   ➡ LCD and Operation Panel
3. Select **Quiet setting**.
4. Select **ON**.

Important

- Operating speed is reduced compared to when **OFF** is selected.
- This function may not be so effective depending on the printer's setting. Furthermore, certain noise, such as when the printer is preparing for printing, is not reduced.

System information

Select this setting item from **Printer details**.

- **Current version**

  Displays the current firmware version.

- **Printer name**

  Displays the printer name currently specified.

- **Serial number**

  Displays the printer serial number.

- **Default password**

  Displays the default password of the printer when **ON** is selected.

- **MAC address (Wi-Fi)**

  Displays the MAC address for Wi-Fi.

- **Root cert. thumbprint (SHA-1)**

  Shows the root certification thumbprint (SHA-1) of the printer.

- **Root certificate thumbprint: SHA-256**

  Shows the root certification thumbprint (SHA-256) of the printer.

Checking the Total Number of Uses of Printer

The total number of uses of printer can be printed and checked.

1. Check that printer is turned on.
2. Load A4 or Letter-sized plain paper.
3. Select **Printer details** on the HOME screen.

   ➡ LCD and Operation Panel
4. Select **Print usage statistics**.
5. Select **Yes**.
6. Press the **OK** button.

   The total number of uses of printer is printed.

Basic Information

- **Safety**
  - Safety Precautions
  - Regulatory Information
  - WEEE
- **Handling Precautions**
  - Canceling Print Jobs
  - Legal Restrictions on Scanning/Copying
  - Transporting Your Printer
  - When Repairing, Lending, or Disposing of the Printer
  - Keeping Print Quality High
  - Ink Tips
- **Specifications**
  - Product Specifications
  - Supported Paper Sizes and Weights
  - Print Area
  - Paper Load Limit
- **Supported Media Types**

Safety

- Safety Precautions
- Regulatory Information
- WEEE

Safety Precautions

Safety Precautions

- This manual contains important notices and safety precautions about your printer.

  Do not use the printer in ways other than described in the accompanying manuals, as this may result in fire, electric shock or other unexpected accidents.

  Safety standard marks and declarations are only valid for the supported voltages and frequencies in the applicable countries or regions.

⚠ Warning

- Users with cardiac pacemakers:

  This product emits a low-level magnetic flux. If you feel abnormalities, please move away from the product and consult your doctor.

- Do not use the printer in the following cases:

  Stop use immediately, unplug the printer and call your local service representative to request repair.

  - Metal objects or liquids are spilt inside the printer.
  - The printer emits smoke, strange odors, or makes unusual noises.
  - The power cord or plug overheat or are broken, bent or damaged in any way.

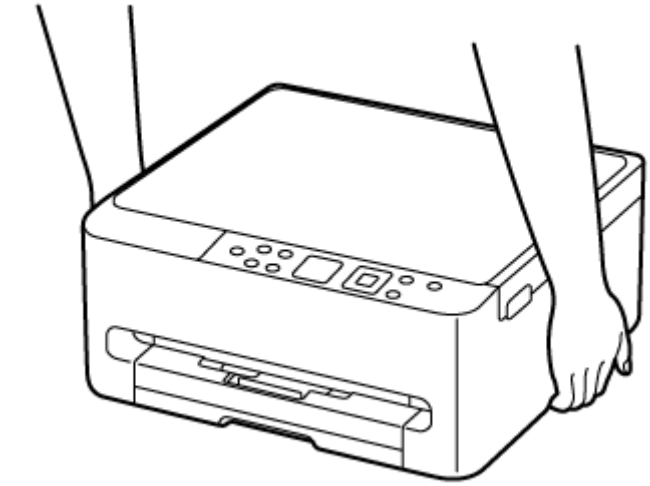
- Failure to adhere to the following may result in fire, electric shock, or injury:
  - Do not place product close to the flammable solvents such as alcohol or thinner.
  - Do not open or modify the printer.
  - Use only the power cord/cables that came with your printer. Do not use these cables with other devices.
  - Do not plug in to voltages or frequencies other than those specified.
  - Plug the power cord into the socket completely.
  - Do not plug in or unplug the power cord with wet hands.
  - Do not damage the power cord or other cables by twisting, bundling, tying, pulling or excessively bending them.
  - Do not place heavy objects on the power cord.
  - Do not connect multiple power cords to a single electrical outlet. Do not use multiple extension cords.
  - Do not leave the printer plugged in during lightning storms.
  - Always unplug the power cord and cables when cleaning. Do not use flammable sprays or liquids such as alcohol or thinners for cleaning.
  - Unplug the power cord once a month to check that it is not overheating, rusted, bent, scratched, split, or otherwise damaged.

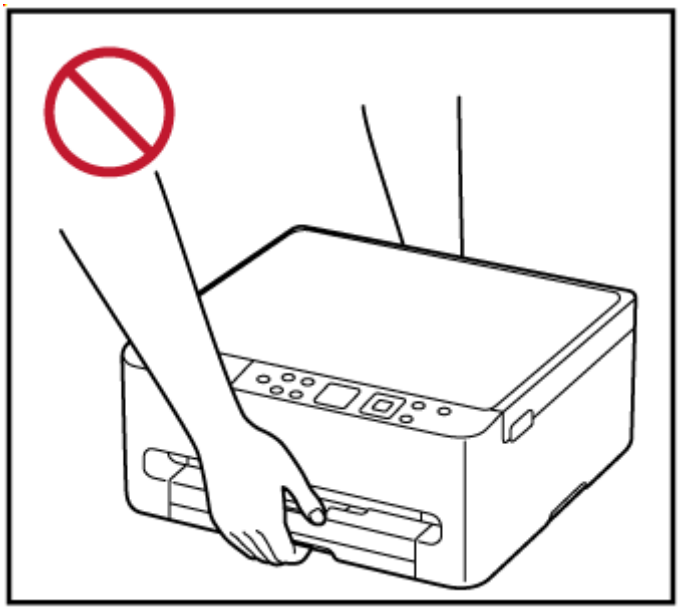
⚠ Caution

- Do not put your hands inside the printer while printing.
- Do not touch the print head or other metal parts immediately after printing.
- Ink
  - Keep ink out of reach of children.

- If ink is accidentally licked or swallowed, rinse out your mouth and drink one or two glasses of water. If irritation or discomfort occurs, obtain medical advice immediately.
- In case ink gets in contact with eyes, rinse with water immediately. In case ink gets in contact with skin, wash with soap and water immediately. If irritation to eyes or skin persists, obtain medical advice immediately.

- Moving the printer
  - Hold the printer by its sides and carry it with both hands.





General Notices

Choosing a Location

Refer to "Specifications" in the Online manual for details on operating environment.

- Do not install the printer in a location that is unstable or subject to excessive vibration.
- Do not install the printer in locations that get very hot (direct sunlight, or close to a heating source), very humid or dusty locations, or outdoors.

- Do not place the printer on a thick rug or carpet.
- Do not place the printer flush against a wall.

Power Supply

- Keep the area around the power outlet clear at all times so you can easily unplug the power cord if necessary.
- Never remove the plug by pulling on the cord.

General Notices

- Do not tilt the printer, stand it on end, or turn it upside down. This may cause ink to leak.
- Do not place anything on top of the printer. Be especially careful to avoid metal objects such as paper clips and staples, and containers holding flammable liquids such as alcohol or thinner.
- Be sure to observe the following when loading the original on the platen. Failure to observe the following may cause the scanner to malfunction or the platen glass to break.
  - Do not place any objects weighing 4.4 lb (2.0 kg) or more on the platen glass.
  - Do not put any pressure of 4.4 lb (2.0 kg) or more on the platen glass, such as pressing down the original.
- Do not attempt to open, disassemble or modify the FINE cartridges. Ink may leak and damage your printer.
- Do not throw FINE cartridges in the fire.

Regulatory Information

Users in the U.S.A.

FCC Notice (U.S.A. Only)
For 120V, 60Hz model
Model Number: K10632 (Contains FCC Approved WLAN Module K30400)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.
However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Use of a shielded cable is required to comply with Class B limits in Subpart B of Part 15 of the FCC Rules.

Do not make any changes or modifications to the equipment unless otherwise specified in the manual. If such changes or modifications should be made, you could be required to stop operation of the equipment.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate equipment.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines as this equipment has very low levels of RF energy. But it is desirable that it should be installed and operated keeping the radiator at least 20cm or more away from person's body.

Canon U.S.A., Inc.
One Canon Park
Melville, New York 11747
1-800-652-2666

Users in Europe

Product Information for the requirement of COMMISSION REGULATION（EU）

The power consumption in Off Mode or network standby and the transition time to Off or network standby are as follows:
https://www.canon-europe.com/consumer/lot26/

Interference

Do not use the printer around medical equipment or other electronic devices. Signals from the printer may interfere with the correct operation of these devices.

WEEE

Only for the United Kingdom

This symbol indicates that this product is not to be disposed of with your household waste, according to the UK Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment Regulations. This product should be handed over to a designated collection point, e.g., on an authorized one-for-one basis when you buy a new similar product or to an authorized collection site for recycling waste electrical and electronic equipment (EEE). Improper handling of this type of waste could have a possible negative impact on the environment and human health due to potentially hazardous substances that are generally associated with EEE. At the same time, your cooperation in the correct disposal of this product will contribute to the effective usage of natural resources. For more information about where you can drop off your waste equipment for recycling, please contact your local city office, waste authority, approved WEEE scheme or your household waste disposal service. For more information regarding return and recycling of WEEE products, please visit www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/.

Only for European Union and EEA (Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein)

This symbol indicates that this product is not to be disposed of with your household waste, according to the WEEE Directive (2012/19/EU) and national legislation. This product should be handed over to a designated collection point, e.g., on an authorized one-for-one basis when you buy a new similar product or to an authorized collection site for recycling waste electrical and electronic equipment (EEE). Improper handling of this type of waste could have a possible negative impact on the environment and human health due to potentially hazardous substances that are generally associated with EEE. At the same time, your cooperation in the correct disposal of this product will contribute to the effective usage of natural resources. For more information about where you can drop off your waste equipment for recycling, please contact your local city office, waste authority, approved WEEE scheme or your household waste disposal service. For more information regarding return and recycling of WEEE products, please visit www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Nur für Europäische Union und EWR (Norwegen, Island und Liechtenstein)

Dieses Symbol weist darauf hin, dass dieses Produkt gemäß der EU-Richtlinie über Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräte (2012/19/EU) und nationalen Gesetzen nicht über den Hausmüll entsorgt werden

darf. Dieses Produkt muss bei einer dafür vorgesehenen Sammelstelle abgegeben werden. Dies kann z. B. durch Rückgabe beim Kauf eines ähnlichen Produkts oder durch Abgabe bei einer autorisierten Sammelstelle für die Wiederaufbereitung von Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräten geschehen. Der unsachgemäße Umgang mit Altgeräten kann aufgrund potentiell gefährlicher Stoffe, die generell mit Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräten in Verbindung stehen, negative Auswirkungen auf die Umwelt und die menschliche Gesundheit haben. Durch die umweltgerechte Entsorgung dieses Produkts tragen Sie außerdem zu einer effektiven Nutzung natürlicher Ressourcen bei. Informationen zu Sammelstellen für Altgeräte erhalten Sie bei Ihrer Stadtverwaltung, dem öffentlich-rechtlichen Entsorgungsträger, einer autorisierten Stelle für die Entsorgung von Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräten oder Ihrem örtlichen Entsorgungsunternehmen. Weitere Informationen zur Rückgabe und Entsorgung von Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräten finden Sie unter www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Zusatzinformationen für Deutschland:

Dieses Produkt kann durch Rückgabe an den Händler, unter den in der Verordnung des Elektro- und Elektronikgerätegesetzes beschriebenen Bedingungen abgegeben werden.
Als Endbenutzer und Besitzer von Elektro- oder Elektronikgeräten sind Sie verpflichtet:

- diese einer vom unsortierten Siedlungsabfall getrennten Erfassung zuzuführen,
- Altbatterien und Altakkumulatoren, die nicht von Altgerät umschlossen sind, sowie Lampen, die zerstörungsfrei aus dem Altgerät entnommen werden können, vor der Abgabe an einer Erfassungsstelle vom Altgerät zerstörungsfrei zu trennen,
- personenbezogene Daten auf den Altgeräten vor der Entsorgung zu löschen.

Die Bedeutung des Symbols der durchgestrichenen Abfalltonne auf Rädern finden Sie oben in dieser Beschreibung.

Die Vertreiber von Elektro- oder Elektronikgeräten haben die Pflicht zur unentgeltlichen Rücknahme von Altgeräten. Die Vertreiber haben die Endnutzer über die von ihnen geschaffenen Möglichkeiten der Rückgabe von Altgeräten zu informieren.

Union Européenne, Norvège, Islande et Liechtenstein uniquement.

Ce symbole indique que ce produit ne doit pas être jeté avec les ordures ménagères, conformément à la directive DEEE (2012/19/UE) et à la réglementation de votre pays. Ce produit doit être confié au distributeur à chaque fois que vous achetez un produit neuf similaire, ou à un point de collecte mis en place par les collectivités locales pour le recyclage des Déchets des Équipements Électriques et Électroniques (DEEE). Le traitement inapproprié de ce type de déchet risque d'avoir des répercussions sur l'environnement et la santé humaine, du fait de la présence de substances potentiellement dangereuses généralement associées aux équipements électriques et électroniques. Parallèlement, votre entière coopération dans le cadre de la mise au rebut correcte de ce produit favorisera une meilleure utilisation des ressources naturelles. Pour plus d'informations sur les points de collecte des équipements à recycler, contactez vos services municipaux, les autorités locales compétentes, le plan DEEE approuvé ou le service d'enlèvement des ordures ménagères. Pour plus d'informations sur le retour et le recyclage des produits DEEE, consultez le site: www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Uitsluitend bestemd voor de Europese Unie en EER (Noorwegen, IJsland en Liechtenstein)

Dit symbool geeft aan dat dit product in overeenstemming met de AEEA-richtlijn (2012/19/EU) en de nationale wetgeving niet mag worden afgevoerd met het huishoudelijk afval. Dit product moet worden ingeleverd bij een aangewezen, geautoriseerd inzamelpunt, bijvoorbeeld wanneer u een nieuw gelijksoortig product aanschaft, of bij een geautoriseerd inzamelpunt voor hergebruik van elektrische en elektronische apparatuur (EEA). Een onjuiste afvoer van dit type afval kan leiden tot negatieve effecten op het milieu en de volksgezondheid als gevolg van potentieel gevaarlijke stoffen die veel voorkomen in elektrische en elektronische apparatuur (EEA). Bovendien werkt u door een juiste afvoer van dit product mee aan het effectieve gebruik van natuurlijke hulpbronnen. Voor meer informatie over waar u uw afgedankte apparatuur kunt inleveren voor recycling kunt u contact opnemen met het gemeentehuis in uw woonplaats, de reinigingsdienst, of het afvalverwerkingsbedrijf. U kunt ook het schema voor de afvoer van afgedankte elektrische en elektronische apparatuur (AEEA) raadplegen. Ga voor meer informatie over het inzamelen en recyclen van afgedankte elektrische en elektronische apparatuur naar www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Sólo para la Unión Europea y el Área Económica Europea (Noruega, Islandia y Liechtenstein)

Este símbolo indica que este producto no debe desecharse con los desperdicios domésticos, de acuerdo con la directiva RAEE (2012/19/UE) y con la legislación nacional. Este producto debe entregarse en uno de los puntos de recogida designados, como por ejemplo, entregándolo en el lugar de venta al comprar un producto similar o depositándolo en un lugar de recogida autorizado para el reciclado de residuos de aparatos eléctricos y electrónicos (RAEE). La manipulación inapropiada de este tipo de desechos podría tener un impacto negativo en el entorno y la salud humana, debido a las sustancias potencialmente peligrosas que normalmente están asociadas con los RAEE. Al mismo tiempo, su cooperación a la hora de desechar correctamente este producto contribuirá a la utilización eficazde los recursos naturales. Para más información sobre cómo puede eliminar el equipo para su reciclado, póngase en contacto con las autoridades locales, con las autoridades encargadas de los desechos, con un sistema de gestión RAEE autorizado o con el servicio de recogida de basuras doméstico. Si desea más información acerca de la devolución y reciclado de RAEE, visite la web www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Només per a la Unió Europea i a l’Espai Econòmic Europeu (Noruega, Islàndia i Liechtenstein)

Aquest símbol indica que aquest producte no s'ha de llençar a les escombraries de la llar, d'acord amb la Directiva RAEE (2012/19/UE) i la legislació nacional. Aquest producte s'hauria de lliurar en un dels punts de recollida designats, com per exemple, intercanviant-lo un per un en comprar un producte similar o lliurant-lo en un lloc de recollida autoritzat per al reciclatge de residus d'aparells elèctrics i electrònics (AEE). La manipulació inadequada d'aquest tipus de residus podria tenir un impacte negatiu en l'entorn i en la salut humana, a causa de les substàncies potencialment perilloses que normalment estan associades als AEE. Així mateix, la vostra cooperació a l'hora de llençar correctament aquest producte contribuirà a la utilització efectiva dels recursos naturals. Per a més informació sobre els punts on podeu lliurar aquest producte per procedir al seu reciclatge, adreceu-vos a la vostra oficina municipal, a les autoritats encarregades dels residus, al pla de residus homologat per la RAEE o al servei de recollida de deixalles domèstiques de la vostra localitat. Per a més informació sobre la devolució i el reciclatge de productes RAEE, visiteu www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Solo per Unione Europea e SEE (Norvegia, Islanda e Liechtenstein)

Questo simbolo indica che il prodotto deve essere oggetto di raccolta separata in conformità alla Direttiva RAEE (2012/19/UE) e alla normativa locale vigente. Il prodotto deve essere smaltito presso un centro di raccolta differenziata, un distributore autorizzato che applichi il principio dell'"uno contro uno", ovvero del ritiro della vecchia apparecchiatura elettrica al momento dell'acquisto di una nuova, o un impianto autorizzato al riciclaggio dei rifiuti di apparecchiature elettriche ed elettroniche. La gestione impropria di questo tipo di rifiuti può avere un impatto negativo sull'ambiente e sulla salute umana causato dalle sostanze potenzialmente pericolose che potrebbero essere contenute nelle apparecchiature elettriche ed elettroniche. Un corretto smaltimento di tali prodotti contribuirà inoltre a un uso efficace delle risorse naturali ed eviterà di incorrere nelle sanzioni amministrative di cui all'art. 255 e successivi del Decreto Legislativo n. 152/06. Per ulteriori informazioni sullo smaltimento e il recupero dei Rifiuti di Apparecchiature Elettriche ed Elettroniche, consultare la Direttiva RAEE, rivolgersi alle autorità competenti, oppure visitare il sito www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Apenas para a União Europeia e AEE (Noruega, Islândia e Liechtenstein)

Este símbolo indica que o produto não deve ser colocado no lixo doméstico, de acordo com a Directiva REEE (2012/19/UE) e a legislação nacional. Este produto deverá ser colocado num ponto de recolha designado, por exemplo, num local próprio autorizado quando adquirir um produto semelhante novo ou num local de recolha autorizado para reciclar resíduos de equipamentos eléctricos e electrónicos (EEE). O tratamento inadequado deste tipo de resíduo poderá causar um impacto negativo no ambiente e na saúde humana devido às substâncias potencialmente perigosas normalmente associadas aos equipamentos eléctricos e electrónicos. Simultaneamente, a sua cooperação no tratamento correcto deste produto contribuirá para a utilização eficaz dos recursos naturais. Para mais informações sobre os

locais onde o equipamento poderá ser reciclado, contacte os serviços locais, a autoridade responsável pelos resíduos, o esquema REEE aprovado ou o serviço de tratamento de lixo doméstico. Para mais informações sobre a devolução e reciclagem de produtos REEE, vá a www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Gælder kun i Europæiske Union og EØS (Norge, Island og Liechtenstein)

Dette symbol angiver, at det pågældende produkt ikke må bortskaffes sammen med dagrenovation jf. direktivet om affald af elektrisk og elektronisk udstyr (WEEE) (2012/19/EU) og gældende national lovgivning. Det pågældende produkt skal afleveres på et nærmere specificeret indsamlingssted, f.eks. i overensstemmelse med en godkendt én-til-én-procedure, når du indkøber et nyt tilsvarende produkt, eller produktet skal afleveres på et godkendt indsamlingssted for elektronikaffald. Forkert håndtering af denne type affald kan medføre negative konsekvenser for miljøet og menneskers helbred på grund af de potentielt sundhedsskadelige stoffer, der generelt kan forefindes i elektrisk og elektronisk udstyr. Når du foretager korrekt bortskaffelse af det pågældende produkt, bidrager du til effektiv brug af naturressourcerne. Yderligere oplysninger om, hvor du kan bortskaffe dit elektronikaffald med henblik på genanvendelse, får du hos de kommunale renovationsmyndigheder. Yderligere oplysninger om returnering og genanvendelse af affald af elektrisk og elektronisk udstyr får du ved at besøge www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Μόνο για την Ευρωπαϊκή Ένωση και τον ΕΟΧ (Νορβηγία, Ισλανδία και Λιχτενστάιν)

Αυτό το σύμβολο υποδηλώνει ότι αυτό το προϊόν δεν πρέπει να απορρίπτεται μαζί με τα οικιακά απορρίμματα, σύμφωνα με την Οδηγία σχετικά με τα Απόβλητα Ηλεκτρικού και Ηλεκτρονικού Εξοπλισμού (ΑΗΗΕ) (2012/19/ΕΕ) και την εθνική σας νομοθεσία. Αυτό το προϊόν πρέπει να παραδίδεται σε καθορισμένο σημείο συλλογής, π.χ. σε μια εξουσιοδοτημένη βάση ανταλλαγής όταν αγοράζετε ένα νέο παρόμοιο προϊόν ή σε μια εξουσιοδοτημένη θέση συλλογής για την ανακύκλωση των αποβλήτων Ηλεκτρικού και Ηλεκτρονικού Εξοπλισμού (ΗΗΕ). Ο ακατάλληλος χειρισμός αυτού του τύπου αποβλήτων μπορεί να έχει αρνητικό αντίκτυπο στο περιβάλλον και την υγεία του ανθρώπου, λόγω δυνητικώς επικίνδυνων ουσιών που γενικά συνδέονται με τον ΗΗΕ. Ταυτόχρονα, η συνεργασία σας όσον αφορά τη σωστή απόρριψη αυτού του προϊόντος θα συμβάλει στην αποτελεσματική χρήση των φυσικών πόρων. Για περισσότερες πληροφορίες σχετικά με τα σημεία όπου μπορείτε να απορρίψετε τον εξοπλισμό σας για ανακύκλωση, επικοινωνήστε με το τοπικό γραφείο της πόλης σας, την υπηρεσία απορριμμάτων, το εγκεκριμένο σχήμα ΑΗΗΕ ή την υπηρεσία απόρριψης οικιακών αποβλήτων. Για περισσότερες πληροφορίες σχετικά με την επιστροφή και την ανακύκλωση των προϊόντων ΑΗΗΕ, επισκεφθείτε την τοποθεσία www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Gjelder kun den europeiske union og EØS (Norge, Island og Liechtenstein)

Dette symbolet indikerer at dette produktet ikke skal kastes sammen med husholdningsavfall, i henhold til WEEE-direktiv (2012/19/EU) og nasjonal lov. Produktet må leveres til et dertil egnet innsamlingspunkt, det vil si på en autorisert en-til-en-basis når du kjøper et nytt lignende produkt, eller til et autorisert innsamlingssted for resirkulering av avfall fra elektrisk og elektronisk utstyr (EE-utstyr). Feil håndtering av denne typen avfall kan være miljø- og helseskadelig på grunn av potensielt skadelige stoffer som ofte brukes i EE-utstyr. Samtidig bidrar din innsats for korrekt avhending av produktet til effektiv bruk av naturressurser. Du kan få mer informasjon om hvor du kan avhende utrangert utstyr til resirkulering ved å kontakte lokale myndigheter, et godkjent WEEE-program eller husholdningens renovasjonsselskap. Du finner mer informasjon om retur og resirkulering av WEEE-produkter på www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Vain Euroopan unionin sekä ETA:n (Norja, Islanti ja Liechtenstein) alueelle.

Tämä tunnus osoittaa, että sähkö- ja elektroniikkalaiteromua koskeva direktiivi (SER-direktiivi, 2012/19/EU) sekä kansallinen lainsäädäntö kieltävät tuotteen hävittämisen talousjätteen mukana. Tuote on vietävä asianmukaiseen keräyspisteeseen, esimerkiksi kodinkoneliikkeeseen uutta vastaavaa tuotetta ostettaessa tai viralliseen sähkö- ja elektroniikkalaiteromun keräyspisteeseen. Sähkö- ja elektroniikkalaiteromun virheellinen käsittely voi vahingoittaa ympäristöä ja ihmisten terveyttä, koska laitteet saattavat sisältää ympäristölle ja terveydelle haitallisia aineita. Lisäksi tuotteen asianmukainen hävittäminen säästää luonnonvaroja. Lisätietoja sähkö- ja elektroniikkalaiteromun keräyspisteistä saat kaupunkien ja kuntien tiedotuksesta, jätehuoltoviranomaisilta, sähkö- ja elektroniikkalaiteromun kierrätysjärjestelmän ylläpitäjältä ja jätehuoltoyhtiöltä. Lisätietoja sähkö- ja elektroniikkalaiteromun keräyksestä ja kierrätyksestä on osoitteessa www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Endast för Europeiska unionen och EES (Norge, Island och Liechtenstein)

Den här symbolen visar att produkten enligt WEEE-direktivet (2012/19/EU) och nationell lagstiftning inte får sorteras och slängas som hushållsavfall. Den här produkten ska lämnas in på en därför avsedd insamlingsplats, t.ex. på en återvinningsstation auktoriserad att hantera elektrisk och elektronisk utrustning (EE-utrustning) eller hos handlare som är auktoriserade att byta in varor då nya, motsvarande köps (en mot en). Olämplig hantering av avfall av den här typen kan ha en negativ inverkan på miljön och

människors hälsa på grund av de potentiellt farliga ämnen som kan återfinnas i elektrisk och elektronisk utrustning. Din medverkan till en korrekt avfallshantering av den här produkten bidrar dessutom till en effektiv användning av naturresurserna. Kontakta ditt lokala kommunkontor, berörd myndighet, företag för avfallshantering eller ta del av en godkänd WEEE-organisation om du vill ha mer information om var du kan lämna den kasserade produkten för återvinning. För mer information om inlämning och återvinning av WEEE-produkter, se www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Pouze Evropská unie a EHP (Norsko, Island a Lichtenštejnsko)

Tento symbol znamená, že podle směrnice o OEEZ (2012/19/EU) a podle vnitrostátních právních předpisů nemá být tento výrobek likvidován s odpadem z domácností. Tento výrobek má být vrácen do sběrného místa, např. v rámci autorizovaného systému odběru jednoho výrobku za jeden nově prodaný podobný výrobek nebo v autorizovaném sběrném místě pro recyklaci odpadních elektrických a elektronických zařízení (OEEZ). Nevhodné nakládání s tímto druhem odpadu by mohlo mít negativní dopad na životní prostředí a lidské zdraví, protože elektrická a elektronická zařízení zpravidla obsahují potenciálně nebezpečné látky. Vaše spolupráce na správné likvidaci tohoto výrobku současně napomůže efektivnímu využívání přírodních zdrojů. Další informace o místech sběru vašeho odpadního zařízení k recyklaci vám sdělí místní úřad vaší obce, správní orgán vykonávající dozor nad likvidací odpadu, sběrny OEEZ nebo služba pro odvoz komunálního odpadu. Další informace týkající se vracení a recyklace OEEZ naleznete na adrese www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Csak az Európai Unió és az EGT (Norvégia, Izland és Liechtenstein) országaiban

Ez a szimbólum azt jelzi, hogy a helyi törvények és a WEEE-irányelv (2012/19/EU) szerint a termék nem kezelhető háztartási hulladékként. A terméket a kijelölt nyilvános gyűjtőpontokon kell leadni, például hasonló cserekészülék vásárlásakor, illetve bármelyik, elektromos és elektronikai berendezésekből származó hulladék (WEEE) átvételére feljogosított gyűjtőponton. Az ilyen jellegű hulladékok a nem megfelelő kezelés esetén a bennük található veszélyes anyagok révén ártalmasak lehetnek a környezetre és az emberek egészségére. Továbbá, a termékből származó hulladék megfelelő kezelésével hozzájárulhat a természetes nyersanyagok hatékonyabb hasznosításához. A berendezésekből származó, újrahasznosítható hulladékok elhelyezésére vonatkozó további tudnivalókért forduljon a helyi önkormányzathoz, a közterület-fenntartó vállalathoz, a háztartási hulladék begyűjtését végző vállalathoz, illetve a hivatalos WEEE-képviselethez. További tudnivalókat a WEEE-termékek visszajuttatásáról és újrahasznosításáról a www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Tylko dla krajów Unii Europejskiej oraz EOG (Norwegia, Islandia i Liechtenstein)

Ten symbol oznacza, że zgodnie z dyrektywą WEEE dotyczącą zużytego sprzętu elektrycznego i elektronicznego (2012/19/UE) oraz przepisami lokalnymi nie należy wyrzucać tego produktu razem z odpadami gospodarstwa domowego. Produkt należy przekazać do wyznaczonego punktu gromadzenia odpadów, np. firmie, od której kupowany jest nowy, podobny produkt lub do autoryzowanego punktu gromadzenia zużytego sprzętu elektrycznego i elektronicznego w celu poddania go recyklingowi. Usuwanie tego typu odpadów w nieodpowiedni sposób może mieć negatywny wpływ na otoczenie i zdrowie innych osób ze względu na niebezpieczne substancje stosowane w takim sprzęcie. Jednocześnie pozbycie się zużytego sprzętu w zalecany sposób przyczynia się do właściwego wykorzystania zasobów naturalnych. Aby uzyskać więcej informacji na temat punktów, do których można dostarczyć sprzęt do recyklingu, prosimy skontaktować się z lokalnym urzędem miasta, zakładem utylizacji odpadów, skorzystać z instrukcji zatwierdzonej dyrektywą WEEE lub skontaktować się z przedsiębiorstwem zajmującym się wywozem odpadów domowych. Więcej informacji o zwracaniu i recyklingu zużytego sprzętu elektrycznego i elektronicznego znajduje się w witrynie www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Platí len pre štáty Európskej únie a EHP (Nórsko, Island a Lichtenštajnsko)

Tento symbol znamená, že podľa Smernice 2012/19/EÚ o odpade z elektrických a elektronických zariadení (OEEZ) a podľa platnej legislatívy Slovenskej republiky sa tento produkt nesmie likvidovať spolu s komunálnym odpadom. Produkt je potrebné odovzdať do určenej zberne, napr. prostredníctvom výmeny za kúpu nového podobného produktu, alebo na autorizované zberné miesto, ktoré spracúva odpad z elektrických a elektronických zariadení (EEZ). Nesprávna manipulácia s takýmto typom odpadu môže mať negatívny vplyv na životné prostredie a ľudské zdravie, pretože elektrické a elektronické zariadenia obsahujú potenciálne nebezpečné látky. Spoluprácou na správnej likvidácii produktu prispejete k účinnému využívaniu prírodných zdrojov. Ďalšie informácie o mieste recyklácie opotrebovaných zariadení získate od miestneho úradu, úradu životného prostredia, zo schváleného plánu OEEZ alebo od spoločnosti, ktorá zaisťuje likvidáciu komunálneho odpadu. Viac informácií nájdete aj na webovej stránke: www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Üksnes Euroopa Liit ja EMP (Norra, Island ja Liechtenstein)

See sümbol näitab, et antud toodet ei tohi vastavalt elektri- ja elektroonikaseadmete jäätmeid käsitlevale direktiivile (2012/19/EL) ning teie riigis kehtivatele õigusaktidele utiliseerida koos olmejäätmetega. Antud

toode tuleb anda selleks määratud kogumispunkti, nt müügipunkt, mis on volitatud üks ühe vastu vahetama, kui ostate uue sarnase toote, või elektri- ja elektroonikaseadmete jäätmete ümbertöötlemiseks mõeldud kogumispunkti. Täiendava teabe saamiseks elektri- ja elektroonikaseadmetest tekkinud jäätmete tagastamise ja ümbertöötlemise kohta võtke ühendust kohaliku omavalitsusega, asjakohase valitsusasutusega, asjakohase tootjavastutusorganisatsiooniga või olmejäätmete käitlejaga. Lisateavet leitate ka Interneti-leheküljelt www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Tikai Eiropas Savienībai un EEZ (Norvēģijai, Islandei un Lihtenšteinai)

Šis simbols norāda, ka atbilstoši ES Direktīvai (2012/19/ES) par elektrisko un elektronisko iekārtu atkritumiem (EEIA) un vietējiem tiesību aktiem no šī izstrādājuma nedrīkst atbrīvoties, izmetot to kopā ar sadzīves atkritumiem. Šis izstrādājums ir jānodod piemērotā savākšanas vietā, piemēram, apstiprinātā veikalā, kur iegādājaties līdzīgu jaunu produktu un atstājat veco, vai apstiprinātā vietā izlietotu elektrisko un elektronisko iekārtu pārstrādei. Nepareiza šāda veida atkritumu apsaimniekošana var apdraudēt vidi un cilvēka veselību tādu iespējami bīstamu vielu dēļ, kas parasti ir elektriskajās un elektroniskajās iekārtās. Turklāt jūsu atbalsts pareizā šāda veida atkritumu apsaimniekošanā sekmēs efektīvu dabas resursu izmantošanu. Lai saņemtu pilnīgāku informāciju par vietām, kur izlietoto iekārtu var nodot pārstrādei, sazinieties ar vietējo pašvaldību, atkritumu savākšanas atbildīgo dienestu, pilnvarotu EEIA struktūru vai sadzīves atkritumu apsaimniekošanas iestādi. Lai saņemtu plašāku informāciju par elektrisko un elektronisko iekārtu nodošanu pārstrādei, apmeklējiet tīmekļa vietni www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Tik Europos Sąjungai ir EEE (Norvegijai, Islandijai ir Lichtenšteinui)

Šis ženklas reiškia, kad gaminio negalima išmesti su buitinėmis atliekomis, kaip yra nustatyta Direktyvoje (2012/19/ES) ir nacionaliniuose teisė aktuose dėl EEĮ atliekų tvarkymo. Šį gaminį reikia atiduoti į tam skirtą surinkimo punktą, pvz., pagal patvirtintą keitimo sistemą, kai perkamas panašus gaminys, arba į elektros ir elektroninės įrangos (EEĮ) atliekų perdirbimo punktą. Netinkamas tokios rūšies atliekų tvarkymas dėl elektros ir elektroninėje įrangoje esančių pavojingų medžiagų gali pakenkti aplinkai ir žmonių sveikatai. Padėdami užtikrinti tinkamą šio gaminio šalinimo tvarką, kartu prisidėsite prie veiksmingo gamtos išteklių naudojimo. Jei reikia daugiau informacijos, kaip šalinti tokias atliekas, kad jos būtų toliau perdirbamos, kreipkitės į savo miesto valdžios institucijas, atliekų tvarkymo organizacijas, patvirtintų EEĮ atliekų sistemų arba jūsų buitinių atliekų tvarkymo įstaigų atstovus. Išsamesnės informacijos apie EEĮ atliekų grąžinimo ir perdirbimo tvarką galite rasti apsilankę tinklalapyje www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Samo za Evropsko unijo in EGP (Norveška, Islandija in Lihtenštajn)

Ta simbol pomeni, da tega izdelka v skladu z direktivo OEEO (2012/19/EU) in državno zakonodajo ne smete odvreči v gospodinjske odpadke. Ta izdelek morate odložiti na ustrezno zbiralno mesto, na primer pri pooblaščenem prodajalcu, ko kupite podoben nov izdelek ali na zbiralno mesto za recikliranje električne in elektronske opreme. Neprimerno ravnanje s takšnimi odpadki lahko negativno vpliva na okolje in človekovo zdravje zaradi nevarnih snovi, ki so povezane z električno in elektronsko opremo. S pravilno odstranitvijo izdelka hkrati prispevate tudi k učinkoviti porabi naravnih virov. Če želite več informacij o tem, kje lahko odložite odpadno opremo za recikliranje, pokličite občinski urad, komunalno podjetje ali službo, ki skrbi za odstranjevanje odpadkov, ali si oglejte načrt OEEO. Če želite več informacij o vračanju in recikliranju izdelkov v skladu z direktivo OEEO, obiščite www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Само за Европейския съюз и ЕИП (Норвегия, Исландия и Лихтенщайн)

Този символ показва, че този продукт не трябва да се изхвърля заедно с битовите отпадъци, съгласно Директивата за ИУЕЕО (2012/19/ЕС) и Вашето национално законодателство. Този продукт трябва да бъде предаден в предназначен за целта пункт за събиране, например на база размяна, когато купувате нов подобен продукт, или в одобрен събирателен пункт за рециклиране на излязло от употреба електрическо и електронно оборудване (ИУЕЕО). Неправилното третиране на този тип отпадъци може да доведе до евентуални отрицателни последствия за околната среда и човешкото здраве поради потенциално опасните вещества, които обикновено са свързани с ЕЕО. В същото време Вашето съдействие за правилното изхвърляне на този продукт ще допринесе за ефективното използване на природните ресурси. Повече информация относно местата, където може да предавате излязло от употреба оборудване за рециклиране, може да получите от местните власти, от органа, отговорен за отпадъците и от одобрена система за излязло от употреба ЕЕО или от Вашата местна служба за битови отпадъци. За повече информация относно връщането и рециклирането на продукти от излязло от употреба ЕЕО посетете www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Doar pentru Uniunea Europeană şi EEA (Norvegia, Islanda şi Liechtenstein)

Acest simbol indică faptul că acest produs nu trebuie aruncat o dată cu reziduurile menajere, în conformitate cu Directiva DEEE (Directiva privind deşeurile de echipamente electrice şi electronice) (2012/19/UE) şi legile naţionale. Acest produs trebuie transportat la un punct de colectare special, de

exemplu un centru care preia produsele vechi atunci când achiziţionaţi un produs nou similar, sau la un punct de colectare autorizat pentru reciclarea deşeurilor provenite de la echipamentele electrice şi electronice (EEE). Mânuirea necorespunzătoare a acestor tipuri de deşeuri poate avea un impact negativ asupra mediului înconjurător şi sănătăţii indivizilor, din cauza substanţelor potenţial nocive care sunt în general asociate cu EEE. În acelaşi timp, cooperarea dvs. la reciclarea corectă a acestui produs va contribui la utilizarea efectivă a resurselor naturale. Pentru mai multe informaţii privind locurile de reciclare a deşeurilor provenite de la echipamente, contactaţi biroul primăriei locale, autoritatea responsabilă cu colectarea deşeurilor, schema DEEE aprobată sau serviciul de colectare a deşeurilor menajere. Pentru mai multe informaţii privind returnarea şi reciclarea produselor DEEE, vizitaţi www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Samo za Europsku uniju i EEZ (Norveška, Island i Lihtenštajn)

Ovaj simbol pokazuje da se ovaj proizvod ne smije odlagati s kućnim otpadom sukladno WEEE Direktivi (2012/19/EC) i vašem nacionalnom zakonu. Ovaj proizvod je potrebno predati na posebno mjesto za sakupljanje otpada, npr. na ovlašteno mjesto gdje možete zamijeniti staro za novo ukoliko kupujete novi sličan proizvod ili na ovlašteno mjesto za sakupljanje rabljene električne i elektroničke opreme (EEE) za recikliranje. Nepropisno rukovanje ovom vrstom otpada može imati negativan učinak na okolinu i zdravlje ljudi zbog supstanci koje su potencijalno opasne za zdravlje, a općenito se povezuju s EEE. Istovremeno, vaša će suradnja kroz propisno odlaganje ovog proizvoda doprinijeti efektivnoj uporabi prirodnih resursa. Za više informacija o tome gdje možete odložiti svoj otpad za recikliranje obratite se vašem lokalnom gradskom uredu, komunalnoj službi, odobrenom WEEE programu ili službi za odlaganje kućnog otpada. Ostale informacije o vraćanju i recikliranju WEEE proizvoda potražite na www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Korisnici u Srbiji

Ovaj simbol označava da ovaj proizvod ne sme da se odlaže sa ostalim kućnim otpadom, u skladu sa WEEE Direktivom (2012/19/EU) i nacionalnim zakonima. Ovaj proizvod treba predati određenom centru za prikupljanje, npr. na osnovi "jedan-za-jedan" kada kupujete sličan novi proizvod, ili ovlašćenom centru za prikupljanje za reciklažu istrošene električne i elektronske opreme (EEE). Nepravilno rukovanje ovom vrstom otpada može da ima moguće negativne posledice po životnu sredinu i ljudsko zdravlje usled potencijalno opasnih materijala koji se uglavnom vezuju za EEE. U isto vreme, vaša saradnja na ispravnom odlaganju ovog proizvoda će doprineti efikasnom korišćenju prirodnih resursa. Za više informacija o tome gde možete da predate vašu staru opremu radi recikliranje, vas molimo, da kontaktirate lokalne gradske vlasti, komunalne službe, odobreni plan reciklaže ili Gradsku čistoću. Za više informacija o vraćanju i recikliranju WEEE proizvoda, posetite stranicu www.canon-europe.com/weee.

Handling Precautions

- Canceling Print Jobs
- Legal Restrictions on Scanning/Copying
- Transporting Your Printer
- When Repairing, Lending, or Disposing of the Printer
- Keeping Print Quality High
- Ink Tips

Legal Restrictions on Scanning/Copying

Scanning, printing, copying, or modifying copies of the following may be punishable under law.

This list is non-exhaustive. When in doubt, check with a local legal representative.

- Paper money
- Money orders
- Certificates of deposit
- Postage stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Identification badges or insignia
- Selective service or draft papers
- Checks or drafts issued by governmental agencies
- Motor vehicle licenses and certificates of title
- Traveler's checks
- Food stamps
- Passports
- Immigration papers
- Internal revenue stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Bonds or other certificates of indebtedness
- Stock certificates
- Copyrighted works or works of art, without the owner's consent

Transporting Your Printer

When relocating the printer for changing your living place, make sure of the following.

Important

- With the FINE cartridge left installed in the printer, press the **ON** button to turn off the power. This allows the printer to automatically cap the print head, thus preventing it from drying.
- When transporting the printer, pack the printer in a plastic bag so that ink does not leak.
- Pack the printer in a sturdy box so that it is placed with its bottom facing down, using sufficient protective material to ensure safe transport.
- When a shipping agent is handling transport of the printer, have its box marked "THIS SIDE UP" to keep the printer with its bottom facing down. Mark also with "FRAGILE" or "HANDLE WITH CARE".

- Please handle with care and ensure the box remains flat and NOT turned upside down or on its side, as the printer may be damaged and ink in the printer may leak.

Note

- When repairing, lending, transferring, or disposing of the printer, see the following page.

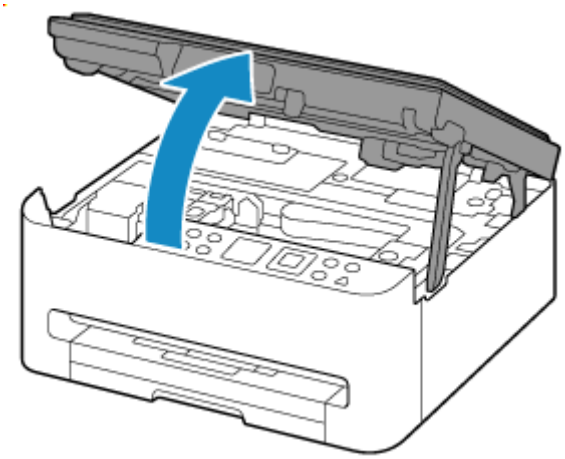
➡ When Repairing, Lending, or Disposing of the Printer

1. Turn the printer off.
2. Check that **ON** lamp is off and unplug power cord.

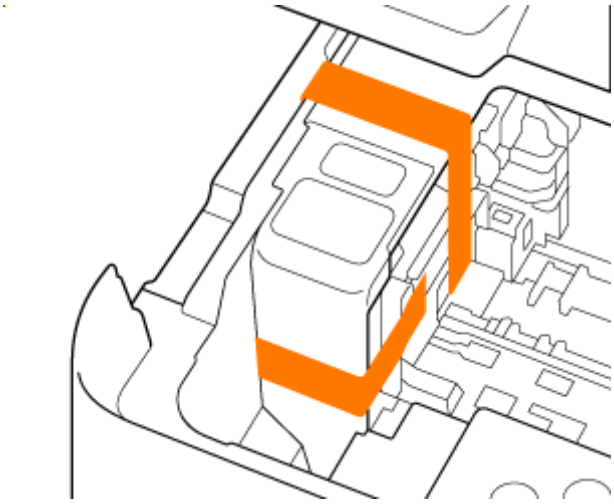
   ### Important

   - Do not unplug the printer while the **ON** lamp is lit or flashing, as it may cause malfunction or damage to the printer, making the printer unable to print.

3. Retract output tray extension and paper output tray.
4. Open the scanning unit / cover.

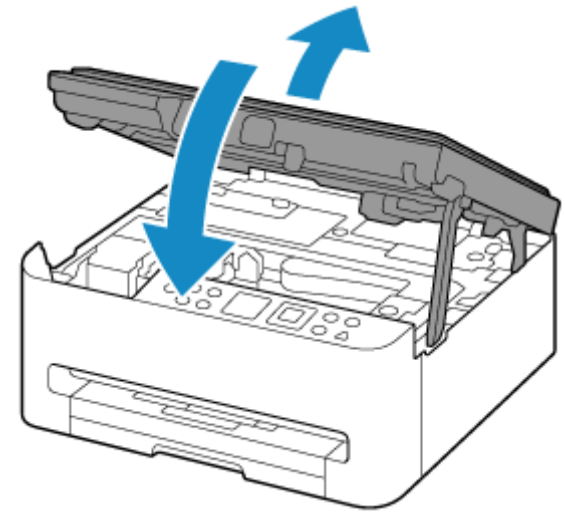


5. Secure the carriage with tape in two positions to ensure that it does not move.



6. Close the scanning unit / cover.

   To close the scanning unit / cover, hold it up once, then take it down gently.



7. Unplug the printer cable from the computer and from the printer, then unplug the power cord from the printer.

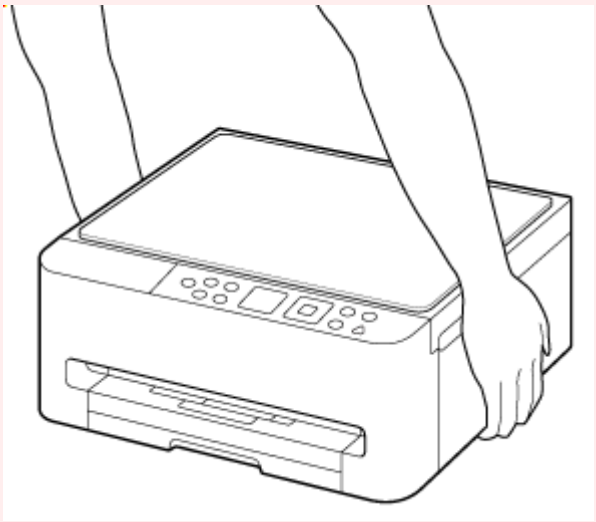
8. Use adhesive tape to secure all the covers on the printer to keep them from opening during transportation. Then pack the printer in the plastic bag.

   Close and seal the opening of the bag with an object such as tape so as not to leak ink.

9. Attach the protective material to the printer when packing the printer in the box.

Important

- Carry the printer without putting your hands on the cassette. If you hold the cassette when carrying, the cassette may come off from the printer.



When Repairing, Lending, or Disposing of the Printer

If you have entered personal data, passwords and/or other security settings on the printer, such information may be stored in the printer.

To keep your personal information safe, please be sure to reset all printer settings when sending the printer for repair, lending or transferring the printer to another person, or disposing of the printer.

➡ Reset settings

Keeping Print Quality High

The key to printing with the optimal printing quality is to prevent the print head from drying or clogging. Always observe the following rules for optimal printing quality.

Note

- Depending on the type of paper, ink may blur if you trace the printed area with a highlight pen or paint-stick, or bleed if water or sweat comes in contact with the printed area.

Never unplug the power cord until the power is turned off!

If you press the **ON** button to turn off the power, the printer caps the print head (nozzles) automatically to prevent from drying. If you unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before the power is turned off completely, the print head will not be capped properly and this will cause drying or clogging.

➡ Turning off the printer

Print periodically!

Just as the tip of a felt pen becomes dry and unusable if it has not been used for a long time, even if it is capped, the print head too, may become dried or clogged if the printer has not been used for a long time. We recommend you to use the printer at least once a month.

Ink Tips

How is ink used for various purposes other than printing?

Ink may be used for purposes other than printing. Ink is not only used for printing, but also for cleaning the print head to maintain the optimal printing quality.

The printer has the function to automatically clean the ink jet nozzles to prevent clogging. In the cleaning procedure, certain amount of ink is consumed for cleaning nozzle.

Also, when the ink cartridge is installed or re-installed, the printer consumes certain amount of ink. Canon recommends you to avoid unnecessary removal and reinstallation of the ink cartridge until and unless ink empty is notified.

Important

- The used ink is ejected into the maintenance cartridge. When the maintenance cartridge becomes full, replacement is necessary. If a message is displayed indicating that the maintenance cartridge is nearly full, replace the maintenance cartridge as soon as possible.

  ➡ When Error Occurred

Does black-and-white printing use color ink?

Black-and-white printing may use ink other than black ink depending on the type of printing paper or the settings of the printer driver. So, color ink is consumed even when printing in black-and-white.

Specifications

- Product Specifications
- Supported Paper Sizes and Weights
- Print Area
- Paper Load Limit

Product Specifications

General Specifications

Interface	**USB port:** Hi-Speed USB * **Network port:** Wi-Fi: IEEE802.11n / IEEE802.11g / IEEE802.11b / IEEE802.11a * A computer that complies with Hi-Speed USB standard is required. Since the Hi-Speed USB interface is fully upwardly compatible with USB 1.1, it can be used at USB 1.1. USB and the network can be used at the same time.
Operating environment	**Temperature:** 41 to 95 °F (5 to 35 °C) **Humidity:** 10 to 90 % RH (no condensation) * The performance of the printer may be reduced under certain temperature and humidity conditions. Recommended conditions: **Temperature:** 59 to 86 °F (15 to 30 °C) **Humidity:** 10 to 80 % RH (no condensation) * For the temperature and humidity conditions of papers such as photo paper, refer to the paper's packaging or the supplied instructions.
Storage environment	**Temperature:** 32 to 104 °F (0 to 40 °C) **Humidity:** 5 to 95 % RH (no condensation)
Power supply	AC 100-240 V, 50/60 Hz (The supplied power cord is only for the country or region you purchased.)
Power consumption	**Printing (Copy):** Approx. 21 W *1 **Standby (minimum):** Approx. 0.9 W *1*2 **Standby (all ports connected):** Approx. 1.4 W **OFF:** Approx. 0.09 W *1 USB connection to a PC *2 The wait time for standby cannot be changed.
External dimensions (W x D x H)	Approx. 14.8 x 14 x 6.7 in. (Approx. 374 x 355 x 168 mm) * With the Cassette and trays retracted.
Weight	Approx. 11.6 lb (Approx. 5.3 kg) * With the FINE Cartridges installed.

Scan Specifications

Scanner driver	**Windows:** TWAIN 1.9 Specification, WIA
Maximum scanning size	A4/Letter, 8.5" x 11.7"/216 x 297 mm
Optical resolution (horizontal x vertical)	1200 x 2400 dpi * * Optical Resolution represents the maximum sampling rate based on ISO 14473.
Gradation (Output)	**Gray:** 8 bit **Color:** RGB each 8 bit

Network Specifications

Communication protocol	SNMP, HTTP, TCP/IP (IPv4/IPv6)
Wi-Fi	**Supported Standards:** IEEE802.11n / IEEE802.11g / IEEE802.11b / IEEE802.11a **Frequency bandwidth:** 2.4 GHz / 5 GHz **Channels:** 2.4 GHz: 1-11 or 1-13 * 5 GHz: W52, W53, W56, W58 * * Frequency bandwidth and available channels differ depending on country or region. **Communication distance:** Indoors 164 feet/50 m * Effective range varies depending on the installation environment and location. **Security:** WPA-PSK (AES) WPA2-PSK (AES) WPA3-SAE (AES) **Setup:** WPS (Push button configuration/PIN code method) Easy wireless connect

Minimum System Requirements

Conform to the operating system's requirements when higher than those given here.

Windows

Operating System	Windows 11, Windows 10, Windows 8.1, Windows 7 SP1 Note: Operation can only be guaranteed on a PC with pre-installed operating system.

	.NET Framework is required.
Amount of hard disk space required for installing the driver	1.5 GB or more The necessary amount of hard disk space may be changed without notice.

macOS

Operating System	macOS Monterey 12 - macOS Sequoia 15

Other Supported OS

iOS/iPadOS, Android, Chrome OS

Some functions may not be available with the supported OS.

Refer to the Canon web site for details.

Information in this manual is subject to change without notice.

Supported Paper Sizes and Weights

Page Sizes

You can use the following page sizes.

Note

- Page sizes and media types the printer supports differ depending on the OS you are using.

Standard sizes:

- Letter
- A5
- A4
- B5
- KG/4"x6"(10x15)
- 5"x7"(13x18cm)
- 7"x10"(18x25cm)
- 8"x10"(20x25cm)
- L(89x127mm)
- 2L(127x178mm)
- Square 5"
- Hagaki
- Hagaki 2
- Envelope Com 10
- Envelope DL
- Nagagata 3
- Nagagata 4
- Yougata 4
- Yougata 6

Special sizes

- Minimum size: 3.50 x 5.00 in. (89.0 x 127.0 mm)
- Maximum size: 8.50 x 11.69 in. (215.9 x 297.0 mm)

Paper Weight

You can use paper in the following weight range.

- Plain paper (including recycled paper): From 17 to 28 lb (64 to 105 g /m^2)

Paper Load Limit

This section shows the paper load limits of the cassette and the paper output tray.

- Paper Load Limits of Cassette
- Paper Load Limit of Paper Output Tray

Note

- Page sizes and media types differ depending on the country or region where the paper is sold. For details on page sizes and media types, access the Canon website.

Paper Load Limits of Cassette

Genuine Canon Paper

Paper for printing documents:

Media Name <Model No.>	Cassette
Canon Red Label Superior <WOP111>	Approx. 100 sheets
Canon Océ Office Colour Paper <SAT213>	Approx. 100 sheets
High Resolution Paper <HR-101N>*1	Approx. 80 sheets

Paper for printing photos:

Media Name <Model No.>	Cassette
Glossy Photo Paper "Everyday Use" <GP-501/ GP-508>*2 Photo Paper Glossy <GP-701>*2 Photo Paper Plus Glossy II <PP-201/PP-208/PP-301>*2 Photo Paper Pro Luster <LU-101>*2 Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss <SG-201>*2 Matte Photo Paper <MP-101>	A4, Letter, 5"x7"(13x18cm), 8"x10"(20x25cm), 2L(127x178mm): 10 sheets KG/4"x6"(10x15), L(89x127mm), Hagaki: 20 sheets

Paper for making original goods:

Media Name <Model No.>	Cassette
Photo Stickers (16 stickers per sheet) <PS-108> Photo Stickers (Free Cutting) <PS-208> Photo Stickers (Variety Pack) <PS-808> Restickable Photo Paper <RP-101> Removable Photo Stickers <PS-308R>	1 sheet

Paper other than Genuine Canon Paper

Common Name	Cassette
Plain Paper (including recycled paper)*1	Approx. 100 sheets
Envelopes	10 envelopes
Japanese Paper Greeting Card	1 sheet

*1 Normal feeding at maximum capacity may not be possible with some types of paper, or under very high or low temperature or humidity. In this case, load half the amount of paper or less.
*2 Feeding from a loaded stack of paper may leave marks on the printed side or prevent efficient feeding. In this case, load one sheet at a time.

Paper Load Limit of Paper Output Tray

Genuine Canon Paper

Paper for printing documents:

Media Name <Model No.>	Paper Output Tray
Canon Red Label Superior <WOP111> Canon Océ Office Colour Paper <SAT213>	Approx. 50 sheets
High Resolution Paper <HR-101N>	Approx. 50 sheets

Paper other than Genuine Canon Paper

Common Name	Paper Output Tray
Plain Paper (including recycled paper)	Approx. 50 sheets

When continuing printing with paper other than the above, we recommend removing already printed paper from the paper output tray to avoid smearing or discoloration.

Supported Media Types

For best results, choose paper designed for how you are printing. A variety of paper for documents as well as photos or illustrations is available from Canon. Use genuine Canon paper to print important photos, when possible.

- Supported Paper Sizes and Weights
- Unsupported Media Types

Note

- Refer to Handling Paper before use.
- Page sizes and media types differ depending on the country or region where the paper is sold. For details on page sizes and media types, access the Canon website.
- Genuine Canon paper is not available in some countries or regions. Note that in the United States, Canon paper is not sold by model number. Instead, purchase paper by name.

Recommended Genuine Canon Paper According to Purpose

Paper for printing documents:

- **Canon Red Label Superior** <WOP111>
- **Canon Océ Office Colour Paper** <SAT213>
- **High Resolution Paper** <HR-101N>

Paper for printing photos:

- **Glossy Photo Paper "Everyday Use"** <GP-501/GP-508>
- **Photo Paper Glossy** <GP-701>
- **Photo Paper Plus Glossy II** <PP-201/PP-208/PP-301>
- **Photo Paper Pro Luster** <LU-101>
- **Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss** <SG-201>
- **Matte Photo Paper** <MP-101>

Paper for making original goods:

- **Photo Stickers (16 stickers per sheet)** <PS-108>
- **Photo Stickers (Free Cutting)** <PS-208>
- **Photo Stickers (Variety Pack)** <PS-808>
- **Restickable Photo Paper** <RP-101>
- **Removable Photo Stickers** <PS-308R>

Usable Media Types Other Than Genuine Canon paper

- Plain Paper (including recycled paper)
- Envelopes

- Japanese Paper
- Greeting Card

➡ Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Media Type) (Windows)

Unsupported Media Types

Do not use the following types of paper. Using such paper will cause not only unsatisfactory results, but also the printer to jam or malfunction.

- Folded, curled, or wrinkled paper
- Damp paper
- Paper with unstraightened edges like manualy cut paper
- Picture postcards
- Postcards affixed with photos or stickers
- Envelopes with a double flap
- Envelopes with an embossed or treated surface
- Envelopes whose gummed flaps are already moistened and adhesive
- Any type of paper with holes
- Paper that is not rectangular
- Paper bound with staples or glue
- Paper with an adhesive surface on the back such as label seal
- Paper decorated with glitter, etc.

Handling Paper

- For warnings on use of the non-printable side, see each product's usage information.
- Be careful not to rub or scratch the surfaces of any types of paper when handling.
- Hold the paper as closely as possible to its edges and try not to touch the printing surface. The print quality may be degraded if the printing surface is smudged with sweat or oil that comes from your hands.
- Do not touch the printed surface until the ink is dried. Even when the ink is dried, be careful not to touch the printed surface as much as possible when handling. Due to the nature of the pigment ink, the ink on the printed surface may be removed when being rubbed or scratched.
- Take out only the necessary number of paper from the package, just before printing.
- To avoid curling, when you do not print, put unused paper back into the package and keep it on a level surface. And also, store it avoiding heat, humidity, and direct sunlight.

Printing

- **Printing Photos and Documents**
- **Printing Hagaki and Envelopes**
- **Other Various Printing Features**

Printing Photos and Documents

- Printing from Computer
- Printing from Smartphone/Tablet
- Use Cloud Integration Service

Printing from Computer

- Printing from Application Software (Windows Printer Driver)
- Printing from Application Software (macOS AirPrint)
- Printing Using Canon Application Software
- Printing from Chromebook

Printing from Application Software (Windows Printer Driver)

- Basic Printing Setup Basic
- Main Controls (Basic Settings Tab)
- Set Media Type, Quality, etc. (Media/Quality Tab)
- Set the Layout of Printed Documents (Page Setup Tab)
- Perform maintenance or settings (Maintenance tab)
- Overview of the Printer Driver
- Updating the Driver

Basic Printing Setup

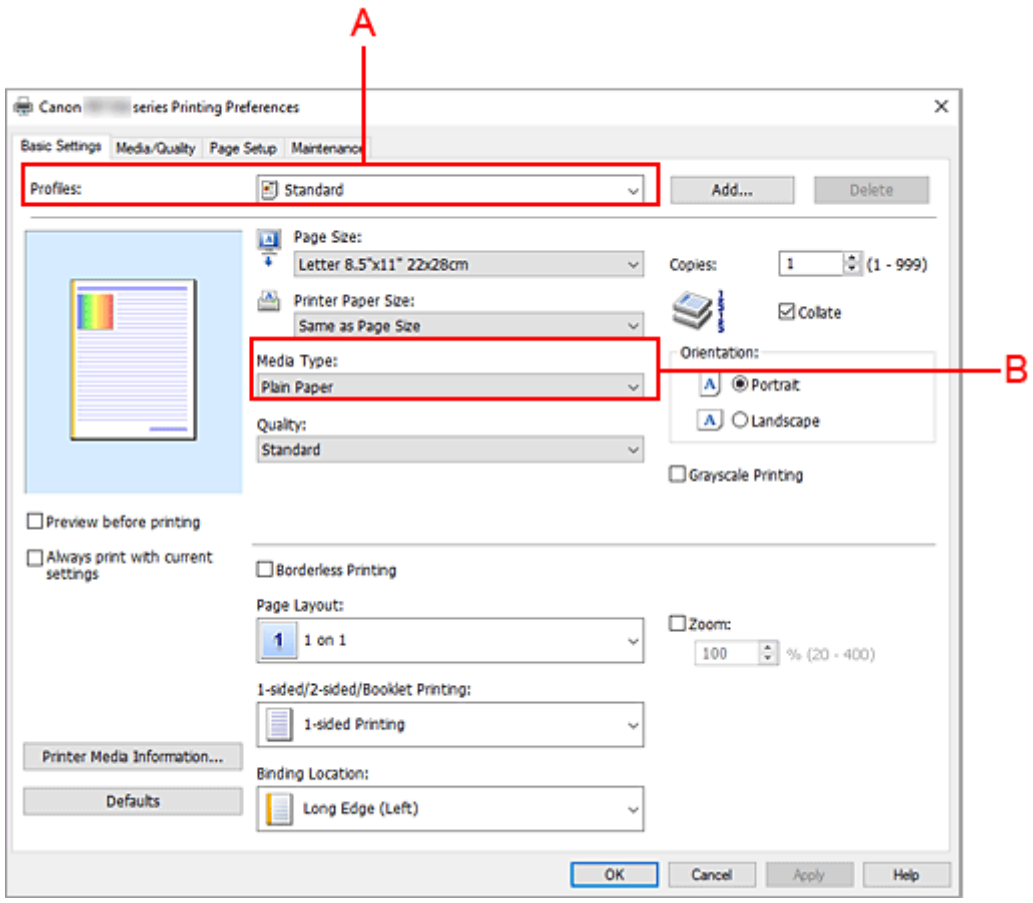
In the **Basic Settings** tab, you can print in various ways according to your purpose.

1. Check that printer is turned on
2. Open printer driver's setup screen
3. Select Profile (A)

   Select the print settings according to your purpose in **Profiles** on the **Basic Settings** tab.
   If you select a print setting, **Paper Size** and **Media Type** will change automatically.

   Note

   - When the paper size to be printed is selected from **Printer Paper Size**, the zoom level is automatically set according to the selected paper size.
     To select a zoom level of your choice, add a checkmark to **Zoom** and enter a number.



4. Select Media Type (B) according to requirements
5. Set Paper
6. Click **OK**

Note

- For details about the paper information to be registered to the printer driver and on the printer, see the following:
  - Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Media Type)
  - Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Paper Size)

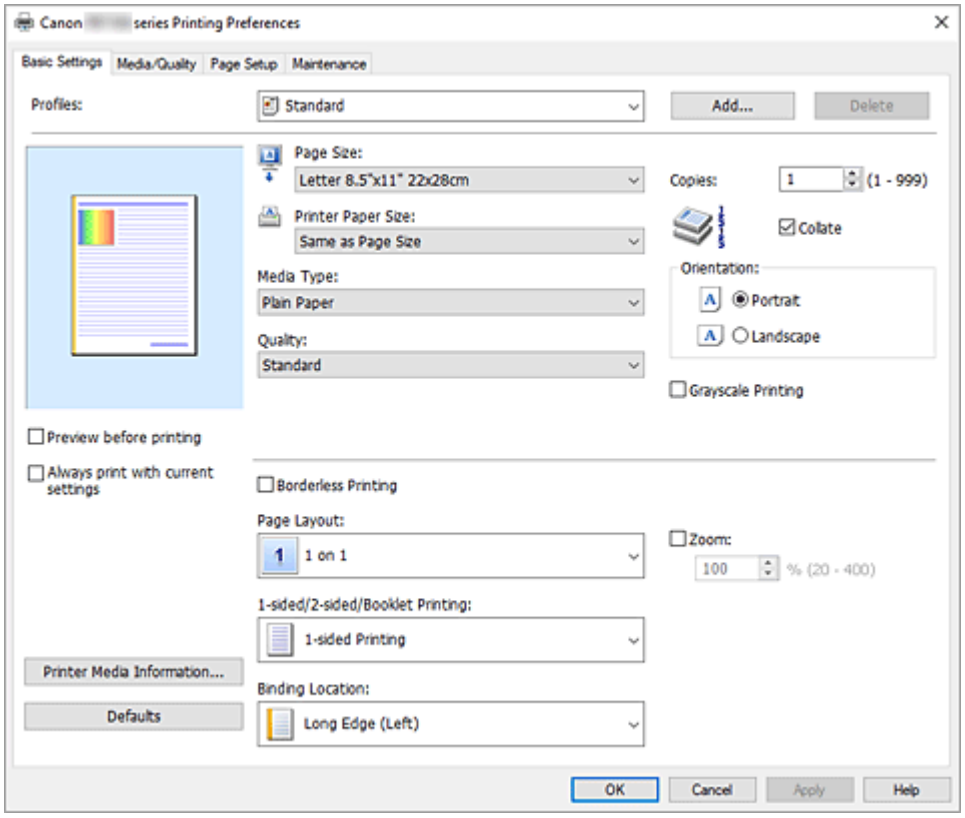
Main Controls (Basic Settings Tab)

- Basic Settings Tab Description
- Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Media Type)
- Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Paper Size)

Basic Settings Tab Description

The **Basic Settings** tab is for registering commonly used print settings. When you select a registered setting, the printer automatically switches to the preset items.

- **Profiles**
- Settings Preview
- **Preview before printing**
- **Always print with current settings**
- **Page Size**
- **Printer Paper Size**
- **Media Type**
- **Quality**
- **Copies**
- **Collate**
- **Orientation**
- **Grayscale Printing**
- **Borderless Printing**
- **Page Layout**
- **Zoom**
- **1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing**
- **Binding Location**



Profiles

The names and icons of frequently used printing profiles are registered. When you select a printing profile according to the purpose of the document, settings that match the purpose are applied.

You can also change a printing profile and register it under a new name. You can delete the registered printing profile.

Standard

These are the factory settings.

If **Page Size**, **Orientation**, and **Copies** were set from the application software, those settings have priority.

Photo Printing

If you select this setting when printing a photo, the photo paper and photo size generally used are set. The **Borderless Printing** check box is checked automatically.

If **Orientation** and **Copies** were set from the application software, those settings have priority.

Paper Saving

Select this setting to save paper when printing a general document. **Page Layout** is set to **2 on 1**, and **1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing** is set to **2-sided Printing**.

If **Page Size**, **Orientation**, and **Copies** were set from the application software, those settings have priority.

Envelope

If you select this setting for printing an envelope, **Media Type** is set automatically to **Envelope**. In the **Envelope Size Setting** dialog box, select the size of the envelope to be used.

Greeting Card

When selected for printing a greeting card, the **Media Type** is automatically set to **Inkjet Greeting Card**. The **Quality** is also set to **High**, and a check-mark is added to **Borderless Printing**.

Note

- You cannot change the order of print settings.

Add...

Displays the **Add to Profiles** dialog box.

Click this button when you want to save the information that you set on the **Basic Settings**, **Media/ Quality**, and **Page Setup** tabs to **Profiles**.

Delete

Deletes a registered printing profile.

Select the name of the setting to be deleted from **Profiles**, and click **Delete**. When a confirmation message is displayed, click **OK** to delete the specified printing profile.

Note

- Printing profiles that are registered in the initial settings cannot be deleted.

Settings Preview

The paper illustration shows how the original will be laid out on a sheet of paper.

You can check an overall image of the layout.

Preview before printing

Shows what the print result will look like before you actually print the data.

Check this check box to display a preview before printing.

Uncheck this check box if you do not want to display a preview.

Always print with current settings

Prints documents with the current settings starting from the next print execution.

When you select this function and then close the printer driver setup window, the information that you set on the **Basic Settings**, **Media/Quality**, and **Page Setup** tabs are saved and printing with the same settings is possible starting from the next print execution.

Important

- If you log on with a different user name, the settings that were set when this function was enabled are not reflected in the print settings.
- If a setting was specified on the application software, it has priority.

Page Size

Selects a page size.

Ensure that you select the same page size as you selected within the application.

If you select **Custom...**, the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box opens and allows you to specify any vertical and horizontal dimensions for the paper size.

Printer Paper Size

Selects the size of paper actually loaded into the printer.

Normally, it will appear as **Same as Page Size**, and the document is printed with no scaling.

If you select a paper size that is smaller than the **Page Size**, the document size will be reduced. If you select a paper size that is larger, the document size will be enlarged.

Also if you select **Custom...**, the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box opens and allows you to specify any vertical and horizontal dimensions for the paper size.

Media Type

Selects a type of printing paper.

Select a media type that matches the paper that is loaded in the printer. This ensures that printing is carried out properly for the specified paper.

Quality

Selects your desired printing quality.

Select one of the following to set the print quality level that is appropriate for the purpose.

High

Gives priority to print quality over printing speed.

Standard

Prints with average speed and quality.

Draft

This setting is appropriate for test printing.

Copies

Specifies the number of copies you want to print. You can specify a value from 1 to 999.

Important

- When the application software that you used to create the document has the same function, specify the settings on the printer driver. However, if the print results are not acceptable, specify the function settings on the application software.

Collate

Check this check box to group together the pages of each copy when you want to print multiple copies. Uncheck this check box when you want to print with all pages of the same page number grouped together.

Important

- When the application software that you used to create the document has the same function, give priority to the printer driver settings. However, if the print results are not acceptable, specify the function settings on the application software. When you specify the number of copies and the printing order with both the application and this printer driver, the number of copies may be multiplied numbers of the two settings or the specified printing order may not be enabled.

Orientation

Selects the printing orientation.

If the application used to create your document has a similar function, select the same orientation that you selected in that application.

Portrait

Prints the document so that its top and bottom positions are unchanged relative to the paper feed direction. This is the default setting.

Landscape

Prints the document by rotating it 90 degrees relative to the paper feed direction.

You can change the rotation direction by going to the **Maintenance** tab, opening the **Custom Settings** dialog box, and then using **Rotate 90 degrees left when orientation is [Landscape]** check box.

To rotate the document 90 degrees to the left when printing, select the **Rotate 90 degrees left when orientation is [Landscape]** check box.

Grayscale Printing

This function converts the data to monochrome data when printing your document.

Borderless Printing

Performs borderless printing without any margins on the paper.

With the borderless printing function, the document to be printed is enlarged, so that it extends slightly off the paper. In other words, the document is printed without any margin.

To adjust the amount that the document extends beyond the paper, click the **Page Setup** tab, add a checkmark to **Borderless Printing**, and enter the value in **Amount of Extension**.

Page Layout

Selects the size of the document you want to print and the type of printing.

1 on 1 to 16 on 1

Multiple pages of document can be printed on one sheet of paper.

To change the page order, click **Preferences...**. In the **Page Layout Printing** dialog box that appears, specify **Page Order**.

Poster (1 x 2) to Poster (4 x 4)

This function enables you to enlarge the image data and divide the enlarged data into several pages to be printed. You can also glue together these sheets of paper to create large printed matter, such as a poster.

Preferences...

Opens the **Poster Printing** dialog box.

Click this button to set details on poster printing.

Zoom

Specifies an enlargement or reduction ratio for the document you want to print.

1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing

1-sided Printing

Select when performing single-sided printing.

2-sided Printing

Select when performing duplex printing.

Manual 2-sided Printing

Selects whether duplex printing is to be performed automatically or manually.

To perform duplex printing manually, check this check box.

Booklet Printing

The booklet printing function allows you to print data for a booklet. Data is printed on both sides of the paper. This type of printing ensures that pages can be collated properly, in page number order, when the printed sheets are folded and stapled at the center.

Manual 2-sided Printing

Selects whether duplex printing is to be performed automatically or manually.

To perform duplex printing manually, check this check box.

Preferences...

Opens the **Booklet Printing** dialog box.

Click this button to set details on booklet printing.

Binding Location

Selects the stapling margin position. The printer analyzes the **Orientation** and **Page Layout** settings, and automatically selects the best stapling margin position. Check **Binding Location**, and select from the list to change it.

To specify the width of the binding margin, set it from the **Page Setup** tab.

Printer Media Information...

Displays **Printer Media Information** dialog box.

You can check the printer settings and apply the checked settings to the printer driver.

Defaults

Restores all the settings you have changed to their default values.

Click this button to return all settings on the **Basic Settings**, **Media/Quality**, and **Page Setup** tabs to their default values (factory settings).

Add to Profiles dialog box

This dialog box allows you to save the information that you set on the **Basic Settings**, **Media/Quality**, and **Page Setup** tabs and add the information to the **Profiles** list on the **Basic Settings** tab.

Name

Enter the name for the printing profile you wish to save.

Up to 255 characters can be entered.

The name appears, with its associated icon, in the **Profiles** list on the **Basic Settings** tab.

Options...

Opens the **Add to Profiles** dialog box.

Changes the details of printing profile to be saved.

Add to Profiles dialog box

Select the icons of the printing profiles to be registered to **Profiles**, and change the items to be saved in the printing profiles.

Icon

Select the icon for the printing profile you wish to save.

The selected icon appears, with its name, in the **Profiles** list on the **Basic Settings** tab.

Save the paper size setting

Saves the paper size to the printing profile in **Profiles**.

To apply the saved paper size when the printing profile is selected, check this check box.

If this check box is unchecked, the paper size is not saved, and consequently the paper size setting is not applied when the printing profile is selected. Instead the printer prints with the paper size specified with the application software.

Save the orientation setting

Saves the **Orientation** to the printing profile in **Profiles**.

To apply the saved print orientation when the printing profile is selected, check this check box.

If this check box is unchecked, the print orientation is not saved, and consequently the **Orientation** setting is not applied when the printing profile is selected. Instead the printer prints with the print orientation specified with the application software.

Save the copies setting

Saves the **Copies** setting to the printing profile in **Profiles**.

To apply the saved copies setting when the printing profile is selected, check this check box.

If this check box is unchecked, the copies setting is not saved, and consequently the **Copies** setting is not applied when the printing profile is selected. Instead the printer prints with the copies setting specified with the application software.

Custom Paper Size dialog box

This dialog box allows you to specify the size (width and height) of the custom paper.

Units

Select the unit for entering a user-defined paper size.

Paper Size

Specifies the **Width** and the **Height** of the custom paper. Measurement is shown according to the units specified in **Units**.

Page Layout Printing dialog box

This dialog box allows you to select the number of document pages to be placed on one sheet of paper, the page order, and whether a page border line is to be printed around each document page. The settings specified in this dialog box can be confirmed in the settings preview on the printer driver.

Page Order

Specifies the document orientation to be printed on a sheet of paper.

Page Border

Prints a page border line around each document page. Check this check box to print the page border line.

Exclude single page documents from Page Layout Printing

If you add a checkmark, single-page documents are printed on a single sheet without performing Page Layout Printing.

Poster Printing dialog box

This dialog box allows you to select the size of the image to be printed. You can also make settings for cut lines and paste markers which are convenient for pasting together the pages into a poster.
The settings specified in this dialog box can be confirmed in the settings preview on the printer driver.

Print "Cut/Paste" in margins

Specifies whether to print the words "Cut" and "Paste" in the margins. These words serve as guidelines for pasting together the pages into a poster. Check this check box to print the words.

Note

- Depending on the environment of the printer driver you are using, this function may not be available.

Print "Cut/Paste" lines in margins

Specifies whether to print cut lines that serve as guidelines for pasting together the pages into a poster. Check this check box to print the cut lines.

Print page range

Specifies the printing range. Select **All** under normal circumstances.
Select **Pages** to specify a specific page or range.

Note

- If some of the pages have not been printed well, specify the pages that do not need to be printed by clicking them in the settings preview of the **Page Setup** tab. Only the pages shown on the screen will be printed this time.

Booklet Printing dialog box

This dialog box allows you to set how to bind the document as a booklet. Printing only on one side and printing a page border, can also be set in this dialog box.
The settings specified in this dialog box can be confirmed in the settings preview on the printer driver.

Preview Icon

Shows the settings made on the **Booklet Printing** dialog box.
You can check what the document will look like when printed as a booklet.

Margin for stapling

Specifies which side of the booklet is to be stapled.

Insert blank page

Selects whether to print the document on one side or both sides of the booklet.

Check this check box to print the document on one side of the booklet and select the side to be left blank from the list.

Margin

Specifies the width of the stapling margin.

The specified width becomes the stapling margin from the center of the sheet.

Page Border

Prints a page border line around each document page.

Check this check box to print the page border line.

Printer Media Information dialog box

This dialog box allows you to check the printer settings and apply the checked settings to the printer driver.

Paper Source

The paper source of the media is being displayed.

Media Type

Displays the **Media Type** that is currently set on the printer.

To apply the displayed setting to the printer driver, click **Set**.

Printer Paper Size

Displays the **Printer Paper Size** that is currently set on the printer.

To apply the displayed setting to the printer driver, click **Set**.

Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Media Type)

When you use this printer, selecting a media type and paper size that matches the print purpose will help you achieve the best print results.
Depending on the media type you are using, specify the media type settings on the printer driver or the printer's operation panel as described below.

Canon genuine papers (Document Printing)

Media name <Model No.>	Media Type in the printer driver	Paper information registered on the printer
Canon Red Label Superior <WOP111>	**Plain Paper**	**Plain paper**
Canon Océ Office Colour Paper <SAT213>	**Plain Paper**	**Plain paper**
High Resolution Paper <HR-101N>	**High Resolution Paper**	**High-Res**

Canon genuine papers (Photo Printing)

Media name <Model No.>	Media Type in the printer driver	Paper information registered on the printer
Photo Paper Plus Glossy II <PP-201/PP-208/PP-301>	**Photo Paper Plus Glossy II**	**PlusGlossyII**
Photo Paper Pro Luster <LU-101>	**Photo Paper Pro Luster**	**Pro Luster**
Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss <SG-201>	**Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss**	**Semi-gloss**
Glossy Photo Paper "Everyday Use" <GP-501/ GP-508>	**Glossy Photo Paper**	**Glossy**
Photo Paper Glossy <GP-701>	**Glossy Photo Paper**	**Glossy**
Matte Photo Paper <MP-101>	**Matte Photo Paper**	**Matte**

Canon genuine papers (Original Product)

Media name <Model No.>	Media Type in the printer driver	Paper information registered on the printer
Restickable Photo Paper <RP-101>	**Glossy Photo Paper**	**Glossy**
Removable Photo Stickers <PS-308R>	**Glossy Photo Paper**	**Glossy**

Commercially available papers

Media name	Media Type in the printer driver	Paper information registered on the printer
Plain Paper (including recycled paper)	**Plain Paper**	**Plain paper**
Envelopes	**Envelope**	**Envelope**
Washi	**Washi**	**Washi**
Other High Quality Photo Paper	**Other High Quality Photo Paper**	**Others**
Greeting Cards	**Inkjet Greeting Card**	**Greeting card**

Note

- For information on Washi that can be used with the printer, see "Print Using Washi."

Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Paper Size)

When you use this printer, selecting a paper size that matches the print purpose will help you achieve the best print results.
You can use the following paper sizes on this printer.

Printer Paper Size in the printer driver	Paper information registered on the printer
Letter 8.5"x11" 22x28cm	**Letter**
A5	**A5**
A4	**A4**
B5	**B5**
4"x6" 10x15cm	**4"x6"(10x15)**
5"x7" 13x18cm	**5"x7"(13x18)**
7"x10" 18x25cm	**7"x10"**
8"x10" 20x25cm	**8"x10"**
L 89x127mm	**L 89x127mm**
2L 127x178mm	**5"x7"(13x18)**
Square 5"x5" 13x13cm	**Square 5"**
Hagaki 100x148mm	**Hagaki (size)**
Hagaki 2 200x148mm	**Hagaki 2**
Envelope Com 10	**Env. Com 10**
Envelope DL	**Envelope DL**
Nagagata 3 4.72"x9.25"	**Nagagata 3**
Nagagata 4 3.54"x8.07"	**Nagagata 4**
Yougata 4 4.13"x9.25"	**Yougata 4**
Yougata 6 3.86"x7.48"	**Yougata 6**
Custom Size	**Any size**

Printing on Postcards

1. Load postcard on the printer
2. Open the printer driver setup window
3. Select commonly used settings

   Display the **Basic Settings** tab, and for **Profiles**, select **Standard**.
4. Select the paper size

   For **Printer Paper Size**, select **Hagaki 100x148mm** or **Hagaki 2 200x148mm**.

   Important

   - Return postcards can be used only when you print them from the computer.
   - When printing a return postcard, always set the paper size to **Hagaki 2 200x148mm** from your application software or the printer driver.
   - Do not fold the return postcard. If a crease is formed, the printer will not be able to feed the postcard properly, and this condition will cause line shifts or a paper jam.
   - With return postcards, borderless printing cannot be used.
5. Select the media type

   Select the Hagaki you want to use from **Hagaki** in **Media Type**.

   Important

   - This printer cannot print on postcards that have photos or stickers attached.
   - You will get cleaner printing if you print the address side first and then print the message side.
   - The paper settings on the printer driver are different, depending on whether you are printing on the address side or the message side.
     For details about the paper information to be registered to the printer driver and on the printer, see the following:
     - Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Media Type)
     - Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Paper Size)
6. Set the print orientation

   To print the address horizontally, set **Orientation** to **Landscape**.
7. Select the print quality

   For **Quality**, select the quality according to your purpose.
8. Click **OK**

   When you perform printing, the data will be printed onto the postcard.

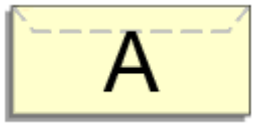
Setting Up Envelope Printing

1. Load envelope on the printer
2. Open the printer driver setup window
3. Select the media type

   Select **Envelope** from **Profiles** on the **Basic Settings** tab.
4. Select the paper size

   When the **Envelope Size Setting** dialog box is displayed, select the envelope size you want to use, and then click **OK**.
5. Set the orientation

   To print the addressee horizontally, select **Landscape** for **Orientation**.

   Note

   - If **Envelope Com 10**, **Envelope DL**, **Yougata 4 4.13"x9.25"**, or **Yougata 6 3.86"x7.48"** is selected for **Printer Paper Size**, the printer rotates the paper 90 degrees to the left to print, regardless of the **Rotate 90 degrees left when orientation is [Landscape]** setting for **Custom Settings** in the **Maintenance** tab.
6. Select the print quality

   For **Quality**, select the quality according to your purpose.
7. Click **OK**

   When you perform print, the information is printed on the envelope.

Important

- When you perform envelope printing, guide messages are displayed.
  To hide the guide messages, check the **Do not show this message again** check box.
  To show the guide again, click the **View Printer Status** button on the **Maintenance** tab, and start the Canon IJ Status Monitor.
  Then click **Envelope Printing** from **Display Guide Message** of the **Option** menu to enable the setting.

Registering a Frequently Used Printing Profile

You can register the frequently used printing profile to **Profiles** on the **Basic Settings** tab. Unnecessary printing profiles can be deleted at any time.

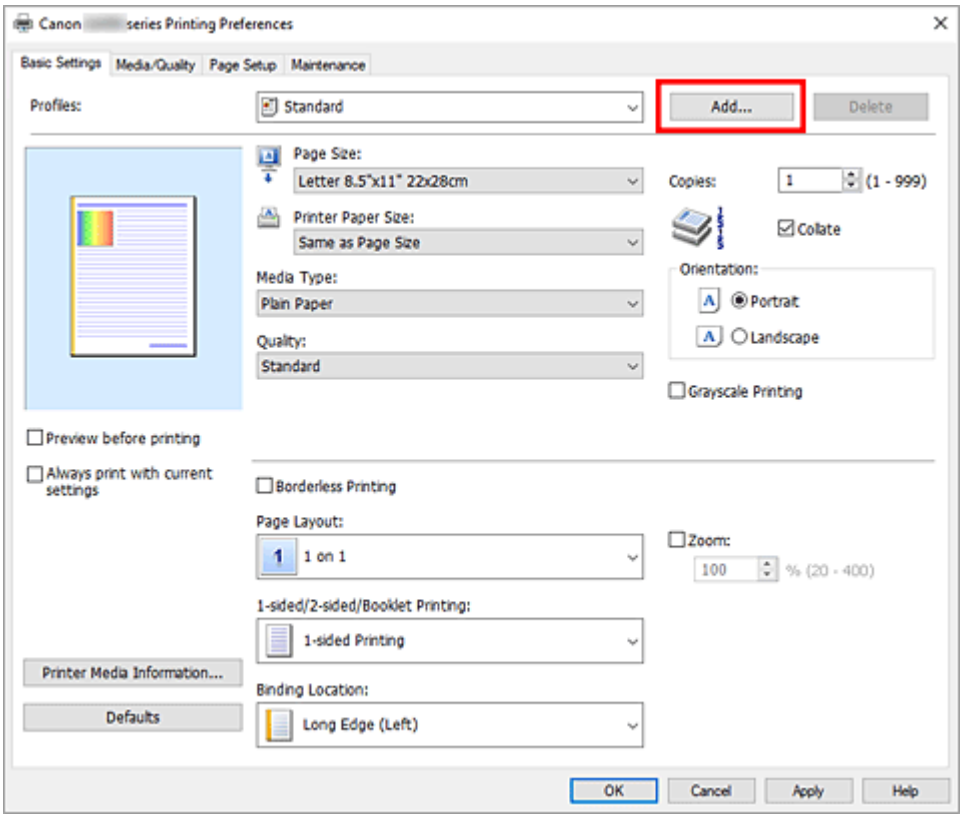
Registering a Printing Profile

1. Open the printer driver setup window

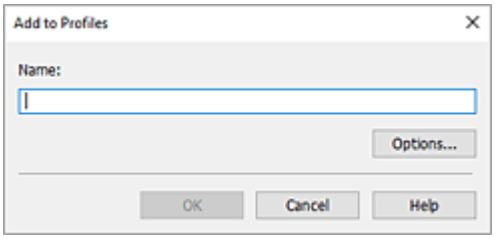
2. Set the necessary items

   From **Profiles** on the **Basic Settings** tab, select the printing profile to be used and if necessary, change each of the settings.
   You can also register necessary items on the **Media/Quality** and **Page Setup** tabs.

3. Click **Add...**



The **Add to Profiles** dialog box opens.



4. Save the settings

Enter a name for the print settings to register in the **Name** field. If necessary, click **Options...**, set the items, and then click **OK**.
In the **Add to Profiles** dialog box, click **OK** to save the print settings and return to the **Basic Settings** tab.
The name and icon are displayed in **Profiles**.

Important

- To save the page size, orientation, and number of copies that was set in each sheet, click **Options...**, and check each item.

Note

- When you re-install the printer driver or upgrade the printer driver version, the print settings that are already registered will be deleted from **Profiles**.
  Registered print settings cannot be saved and preserved. If a profile is deleted, register the print settings again.

Deleting Unnecessary Printing Profile

1. Select the printing profile to be deleted

Select the printing profile you want to delete from the **Profiles** list on the **Basic Settings** tab.

2. Delete the printing profile

Click **Delete**. When the confirmation message appears, click **OK**.
The selected printing profile is deleted from the **Profiles** list.

Note

- Printing profiles that are registered in the initial settings cannot be deleted.

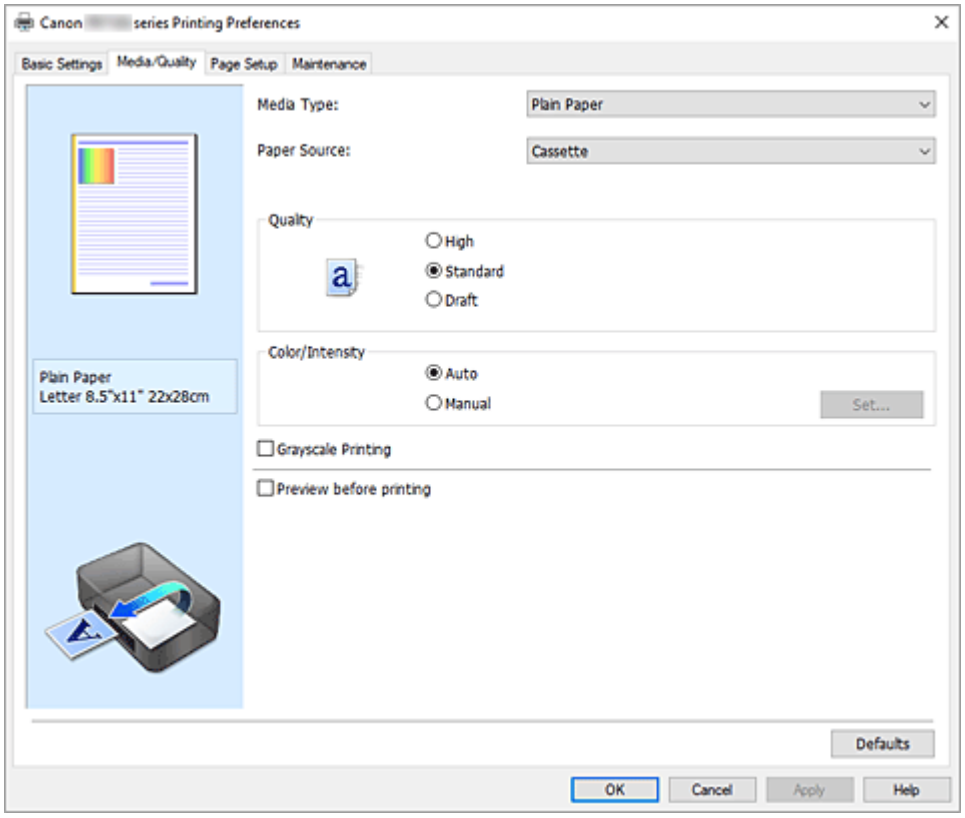
Set Media Type, Quality, etc. (Media/Quality Tab)

- **Media/Quality Tab Description**
- **Adjust Colors**
- **Specifying Color Correction**
  - Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data
  - Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver
  - Printing with ICC Profiles

Media/Quality Tab Description

The **Media/Quality** tab allows you to create a basic print setup in accordance with the media type. You can also adjust the print quality and color tones.

- Settings Preview
- **Media Type**
- **Paper Source**
- **Quality**
- **Color/Intensity**
- **Grayscale Printing**
- **Preview before printing**



Settings Preview

The paper illustration shows how the original will be laid out on a sheet of paper.
You can check an overall image of the layout.

Media Type

Selects a type of printing paper.
Select a media type that matches the paper that is loaded in the printer. This ensures that printing is carried out properly for the specified paper.

Paper Source

Shows the source from which paper is supplied.

Cassette

Paper is always supplied from the cassette.

Quality

Selects your desired printing quality.

Select one of the following to set the print quality level that is appropriate for the purpose.

Important

- Depending on the **Media Type** settings, the same print results may be produced even if the **Quality** is changed.

High

Gives priority to print quality over printing speed.

Standard

Prints with average speed and quality.

Draft

This setting is appropriate for test printing.

Color/Intensity

Selects color adjustment method.

Auto

Cyan, **Magenta**, **Yellow**, **Brightness**, **Contrast**, and so on are adjusted automatically.

Manual

Select when you set the individual settings such as **Cyan**, **Magenta**, **Yellow**, **Brightness**, **Contrast**, etc. and **Color Correction** method.

Set...

Select **Manual** for **Color/Intensity** to enable this button.

In the **Manual Color Adjustment** dialog box, you can adjust individual color settings such as **Cyan**, **Magenta**, **Yellow**, **Brightness**, and **Contrast** on the **Color Adjustment** tab, and select the **Color Correction** method on the **Matching** tab.

Note

- If you want to use an ICC profile to adjust colors, use the **Manual Color Adjustment** dialog box to set the profile.

Grayscale Printing

This function converts the data to monochrome data when printing your document.

Check this check box to print a color document in monochrome.

Preview before printing

Shows what the print result will look like before you actually print the data.

Check this check box to display a preview before printing.

Defaults

Restores all the settings you have changed to their default values.

Clicking this button restores all the settings on the current screen to their default values (factory settings).

Color Adjustment Tab

This tab allows you to adjust the color balance by changing the settings of the **Cyan**, **Magenta**, **Yellow**, **Brightness**, and **Contrast** options.

Preview

Shows the effect of color adjustment.

The color and brightness change when each item is adjusted.

Note

- The graphic is in monochrome when the **Grayscale Printing** check box is checked.

View Color Pattern

Displays a pattern for checking color changes produced by color adjustment.

If you want to display the preview image with a color pattern, check this check box.

Cyan / Magenta / Yellow

Adjusts the strengths of **Cyan**, **Magenta**, and **Yellow**.

Moving the slider to the right makes a color stronger, and moving the slider to the left makes a color weaker.

You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50.

This adjustment changes the relative amount of ink of each color used, which alters the total color balance of the document. Use your application if you want to change the total color balance significantly. Use the printer driver only if you want to adjust the color balance slightly.

Brightness

Adjusts the brightness of your print. You cannot change the levels of pure white and black. However, the brightness of the colors between white and black can be changed. Moving the slider to the right brightens (dilutes) the colors, and moving the slider to the left darkens (intensifies) the colors. You can also directly enter brightness values that are linked to the slider bar. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50.

Contrast

Adjusts the contrast between light and dark in the image to be printed.

Moving the slider to the right increases the contrast, moving the slider to the left decreases the contrast.

You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50.

Matching Tab

Allows you to select the method for adjusting colors to match the type of document to be printed.

Color Correction

Allows you to select **Driver Matching**, **ICM**, or **None** to match the purpose of the print operation.

Driver Matching

With Canon Digital Photo Color, you can print sRGB data with color tints that most people prefer.

ICM

Adjusts the colors by using an ICC profile when printing.

Important

- If the application software is set so that ICM is disabled, **ICM** is unavailable for **Color Correction** and the printer may not be able to print the image data properly.

None

Disables color adjustment with the printer driver. Select this value when you are specifying an individually created printing ICC profile in an application software to print data.

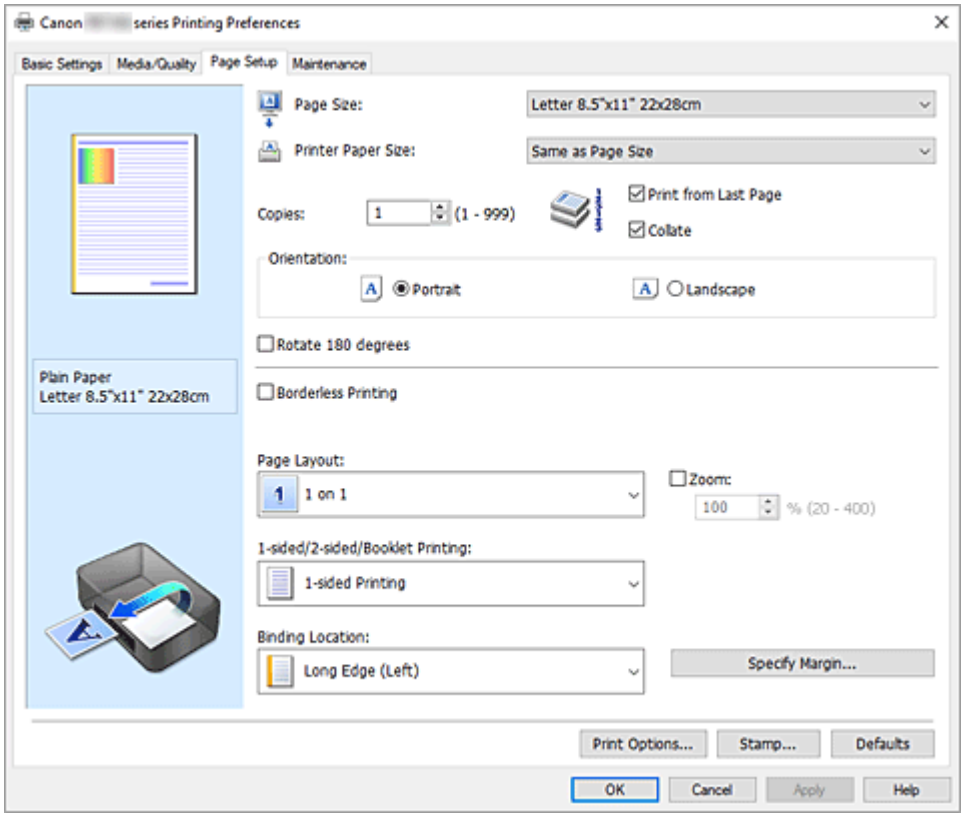
Set the Layout of Printed Documents (Page Setup Tab)

- Page Setup Tab Description
- Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order
- Perform Borderless Printing

Page Setup Tab Description

The **Page Setup** tab allows you to determine how a document is to be arranged on the paper. Also, this tab allows you to set the number of copies and the order of printing. If the application which created the document has a similar function, set them with the application.

- Settings Preview
- **Page Size**
- **Printer Paper Size**
- **Copies**
- **Print from Last Page**
- **Collate**
- **Orientation**
- **Rotate 180 degrees**
- **Borderless Printing**
- **Page Layout**
- **Zoom**
- **1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing**
- **Binding Location**
- **Specify Margin**
- **Print Options**
- **Stamp**



Settings Preview

The paper illustration shows how the original will be laid out on a sheet of paper. You can check an overall image of the layout.

Page Size

Selects a page size.

Ensure that you select the same page size as you selected within the application.

If you select **Custom...**, the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box opens and allows you to specify any vertical and horizontal dimensions for the paper size.

Printer Paper Size

Selects the size of paper actually loaded into the printer.

The default setting is **Same as Page Size** to perform normal-sized printing.

If you select a paper size that is smaller than the **Page Size**, the document size will be reduced. If you select a paper size that is larger, the document size will be enlarged.

Also if you select **Custom...**, the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box opens and allows you to specify any vertical and horizontal dimensions for the paper size.

Copies

Specifies the number of copies you want to print. You can specify a value from 1 to 999.

Important

- If the application used to create your document has a similar function, specify the number of copies with the application without specifying it here.

Print from Last Page

Check this check box when you want to print from the last page in order. If you do this, you do not need to sort the pages into their correct order after printing.

Uncheck this check box to print your document in normal order, starting from the first page.

Collate

Check this check box to group together the pages of each copy when you want to print multiple copies.

Uncheck this check box when you want to print with all pages of the same page number grouped together.

Important

- When the application software that you used to create the document has the same function, give priority to the printer driver settings. However, if the print results are not acceptable, specify the function settings on the application software. When you specify the number of copies and the printing order with both the application and this printer driver, the number of copies may be multiplied numbers of the two settings or the specified printing order may not be enabled.

Orientation

Selects the printing orientation.

If the application used to create your document has a similar function, select the same orientation that you selected in that application.

Portrait

Prints the document so that its top and bottom positions are unchanged relative to the paper feed direction. This is the default setting.

Landscape

Prints the document by rotating it 90 degrees relative to the paper feed direction.

You can change the rotation direction by going to the **Maintenance** tab, opening the **Custom Settings** dialog box, and then using **Rotate 90 degrees left when orientation is [Landscape]** check box.

To rotate the document 90 degrees to the left when printing, select the **Rotate 90 degrees left when orientation is [Landscape]** check box.

Rotate 180 degrees

Prints the document by rotating it 180 degrees against the paper feed direction.

The width of print area and the amount of extension that are configured in other application software will be reversed vertically and horizontally.

Borderless Printing

Chooses whether you are printing on a full page without any page margins or printing with page margins.

In borderless printing, originals are enlarged to extend slightly off the paper. Thus, printing can be performed without any margins (border).

Use **Amount of Extension** to adjust how much of the document extends off the paper during borderless printing.

Amount of Extension

Adjusts how much of the document extends off the paper during borderless printing.

Moving the slider to the right increases the amount of extension and allows you to perform borderless printing with no problems.

Moving the slider to the left reduces the amount of extension and expands the range of the document to print.

Page Layout

Selects the size of the document you want to print and the type of printing.

1 on 1 to 16 on 1

Multiple pages of document can be printed on one sheet of paper. To change the page order, click **Preferences...**. In the **Page Layout Printing** dialog box that appears, specify **Page Order**.

Poster (1 x 2) to Poster (4 x 4)

This function enables you to enlarge the image data and divide the enlarged data into several pages to be printed.

You can also glue together these sheets of paper to create large printed matter, such as a poster.

Preferences...

Opens the **Poster Printing** dialog box.

Click this button to set details on poster printing.

Zoom

Specifies an enlargement or reduction ratio for the document you want to print.

1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing

1-sided Printing

Select when performing single-sided printing.

2-sided Printing

Select when performing duplex printing.

Manual 2-sided Printing

Selects whether duplex printing is to be performed automatically or manually.

To perform duplex printing manually, check this check box.

Booklet Printing

The booklet printing function allows you to print data for a booklet. Data is printed on both sides of the paper. This type of printing ensures that pages can be collated properly, in page number order, when the printed sheets are folded and stapled at the center.

Manual 2-sided Printing

Selects whether duplex printing is to be performed automatically or manually.

To perform duplex printing manually, check this check box.

Preferences...

Opens the **Booklet Printing** dialog box. Click this button to set details on booklet printing.

Binding Location

Selects the stapling margin position.

The printer analyzes the **Orientation** and **Page Layout** settings, and automatically selects the best stapling margin position. Check **Binding Location**, and select from the list to change it.

Specify Margin...

Opens the **Specify Margin** dialog box. You can specify the width of the margin.

Print Options...

Opens the **Print Options** dialog box.

Changes detailed printer driver settings for print data that is sent from applications.

Stamp...

Opens the **Stamp** dialog box.

The **Stamp** function allows you to print a stamp text or a bitmap over or behind document data. It also allows you to print date, time and user name.

Note

- Depending on the environment, **Stamp** may not be available.

Defaults

Restores all the settings you have changed to their default values.

Clicking this button restores all the settings on the current screen to their default values (factory settings).

Custom Paper Size dialog box

This dialog box allows you to specify the size (width and height) of the custom paper.

Units

Select the unit for entering a user-defined paper size.

Paper Size

Specifies the **Width** and the **Height** of the custom paper. Measurement is shown according to the units specified in **Units**.

Page Layout Printing dialog box

This dialog box allows you to select the number of document pages to be placed on one sheet of paper, the page order, and whether a page border line is to be printed around each document page.

The settings specified in this dialog box can be confirmed in the settings preview on the printer driver.

Page Order

Specifies the document orientation to be printed on a sheet of paper.

Page Border

Prints a page border line around each document page.
Check this check box to print the page border line.

Exclude single page documents from Page Layout Printing

If you add a checkmark, single-page documents are printed on a single sheet without performing Page Layout Printing.

Poster Printing dialog box

This dialog box allows you to select the size of the image to be printed. You can also make settings for cut lines and paste markers which are convenient for pasting together the pages into a poster.
The settings specified in this dialog box can be confirmed in the settings preview on the printer driver.

Print "Cut/Paste" in margins

Specifies whether to print the words "Cut" and "Paste" in the margins. These words serve as guidelines for pasting together the pages into a poster.
Check this check box to print the words.

Note

- Depending on the environment of the printer driver you are using, this function may not be available.

Print "Cut/Paste" lines in margins

Specifies whether to print cut lines that serve as guidelines for pasting together the pages into a poster.
Check this check box to print the cut lines.

Print page range

Specifies the printing range. Select **All** under normal circumstances.
Select **Pages** to specify a specific page or range.

Note

- If some of the pages have not been printed well, specify the pages that do not need to be printed by clicking them in the settings preview of the **Page Setup** tab. Only the pages shown on the screen will be printed this time.

Booklet Printing dialog box

This dialog box allows you to set how to bind the document as a booklet. Printing only on one side and printing a page border, can also be set in this dialog box.
The settings specified in this dialog box can be confirmed in the settings preview on the printer driver.

Preview Icon

Shows the settings made on the **Booklet Printing** dialog box.
You can check what the document will look like when printed as a booklet.

Margin for stapling

Specifies which side of the booklet is to be stapled.

Insert blank page

Selects whether to print the document on one side or both sides of the booklet.

Check this check box to print the document on one side of the booklet and select the side to be left blank from the list.

Margin

Specifies the width of the stapling margin.

The specified width becomes the stapling margin from the center of the sheet.

Page Border

Prints a page border line around each document page.

Check this check box to print the page border line.

Specify Margin dialog box

This dialog box allows you to specify the margin width for the side to be stapled. If a document does not fit on one page, the document is reduced when printed.

Margin

Specifies the width of the stapling margin.

The width of the side specified by **Binding Location** becomes the stapling margin.

Print Options dialog box

Makes changes to print data that is sent to the printer.

Disable ICM required from the application software

Disables the ICM function required from the application software.

When an application software uses Windows ICM to print data, unexpected colors may be produced or the printing speed may decrease. If these problems occur, checking this check box may resolve the problems.

Important

- Uncheck this check box under normal circumstances.
- This function does not work when **ICM** is selected for **Color Correction** on the **Matching** tab of the **Manual Color Adjustment** dialog box.

Disable the color profile setting of the application software

Checking this check box disables information in the color profile that was set on the application software.

When the information in the color profile set on the application software is output to the printer driver, the print result may contain unexpected colors. If this happens, checking this check box may resolve the problem.

Important

- Uncheck this check box under normal circumstances.
- Even when this check box is checked, only some of the information in the color profile is disabled, and the color profile can still be used for printing.

Ungroup Papers

Sets the display method of **Media Type**, **Page Size**, and **Printer Paper Size**.
To display the items separately, select the check box.
To display the items as a group, clear the check box.

Do not allow application software to compress print data

Compression of the application software print data is prohibited.
If the print result has missing image data or unintended colors, selecting this check box may improve the condition.

Important

- Uncheck this check box under normal circumstances.

Print after creating print data by page

The print data is created in page units, and printing starts after the processing of one page of print data is complete.
If a printed document contains unintended results such as streaks, selecting this check box may improve the results.

Important

- Uncheck this check box under normal circumstances.

Print barcodes and 2D barcodes clearly

If you add a checkmark, it might solve readability issues with barcodes or 2D barcodes (QR codes).

Important

- Print speed might become slower.
- The desired effectiveness might not be achieved.

Prevention of Print Data Loss

You can reduce the size of the print data that was created with the application software and then print the data.
Depending on the application software being used, the image data may be cut off or may not be printed properly. In such cases, select **On**. If you will not be using this function, select **Off**.

Important

- When using this function, the print quality may drop depending on the print data.

Unit of Print Data Processing

Selects the processing unit of the print data to be sent to the printer.
Select **Recommended** under normal circumstances.

Important

- A large amount of memory may be used for certain settings.
  Do not change the setting if your computer has a small amount of memory.

Print With

Specify the FINE cartridge to be used from the installed FINE cartridges.
Select from **All Colors (Default)**, **Color Only**, **Black Only**.

Important

- When the following settings are specified, **Black Only** does not function because the printer uses the color FINE cartridge to print documents.

- Other than **Plain Paper**, **Envelope**, **Ink Jet Hagaki (A)**, **Hagaki K (A)**, **Hagaki (A)**, or **Hagaki** is selected for **Media Type** on the **Media/Quality** tab
- A checkmark is added to **Borderless Printing** on the **Page Setup** tab

• Do not detach the FINE cartridge that is not in use. Printing cannot be performed while either FINE cartridge is detached.

Print charts and diagrams in documents more vividly (plain paper)

If you select **Use Printer Settings**, printing is performed according to the printer's settings.
To see your printer settings, see "Print settings."

Note

• Depending on the environment, this function may not be available.

Stamp dialog box

The **Stamp** dialog box allows you to print a stamp over or behind the document pages. In addition to the pre-registered ones, you can register and use your original stamp.

Stamp

Stamp printing is a function that prints a stamp over a document.
Check this check box and select a title from the list to print a stamp.

Define Stamp...

Opens the **Stamp Settings** dialog box.
You can check the details of a selected stamp or save a new stamp.

Place stamp over text

Sets how the stamp is to be printed over the document.
Check the **Stamp** check box to enable this.
Check this check box to print a stamp over the printed document page. The printed data may be hidden behind the stamp.
Uncheck this check box to print the document data over the stamp. The printed data will not be hidden behind the stamp. However, the sections of the stamp that are overlapped by the document may be hidden.

Stamp first page only

Selects whether the stamp is to be printed on the first page only or on all pages when the document has two or more pages.
Check the **Stamp** check box to enable this.
Check this check box to print a stamp on the first page only.

Stamp Tab

The Stamp tab allows you to set the text and bitmap file (.bmp) to be used for a stamp.

Preview Window

Shows the status of the stamp configured in each tab.

Stamp Type

Specifies the stamp type.
Select **Text** to create a stamp with characters. Select **Bitmap** to create with a bitmap file. Select

Date/Time/User Name to display the creation date/time and user name of the printed document.
The setting items in the **Stamp** tab change depending on the selected type.

- For **Text** registration, the characters must already be entered in **Stamp Text**. If necessary, change the **TrueType Font**, **Style**, **Size**, and **Outline** settings. You can select the color of the stamp by clicking **Select Color...**.
- For **Bitmap**, click **Select File...** and select the bitmap file (.bmp) to be used. If necessary, change the settings of the **Size** and **Transparent white area**.
- For **Date/Time/User Name**, the creation date/time and user name of the printed object are displayed in **Stamp Text**. If necessary, change the settings of **TrueType Font**, **Style**, **Size**, and **Outline**. You can select the color of the stamp by clicking **Select Color...**.

When selecting **Text** or **Date/Time/User Name** under **Stamp Type**, the following options will be displayed.

Stamp Text

Specifies the stamp text string.
Up to 64 characters can be entered.
For **Date/Time/User Name**, the creation date/time and user name of the printed object are displayed in **Stamp Text**.

TrueType Font

Selects the font for the stamp text string.

Style

Selects the font style for the stamp text string.

Size

Selects the font size for the stamp text string.

Outline

Selects a frame that encloses the stamp text string.
If a large font size is selected for **Size**, characters may extend outside of the stamp border.

Color/Select Color...

Shows the current color for the stamp.
To select a different color, click **Select Color...** to open the **Color** dialog box, and select or create a color you wish to use as a stamp.

When selecting **Bitmap** under **Stamp Type**, the following options will be displayed.

File

Specifies the name of the bitmap file to be used as the stamp.

Select File...

Opens the dialog box to open a file.
Click this button to select a bitmap file to be used as a stamp.

Size

Adjusts the size of the bitmap file to be used as a stamp.
Moving the slider to the right increases the size, moving the slider to the left decreases the size.

Transparent white area

Specifies whether to make white-filled areas of the bitmap transparent.
Check this check box to make white-filled areas of the bitmap transparent.

Note

- Click **Defaults** to set **Stamp Type** to text, **Stamp Text** to blank, **TrueType Font** to Arial, **Style** to Regular, **Size** to 36 points, **Outline** unchecked, and **Color** to gray with the RGB values (192, 192, 192).

Placement Tab

The Placement tab allows you to set the position where the stamp is to be printed.

Preview Window

Shows the status of the stamp configured in each tab.

Position

Specifies the stamp position on the page.

Selecting **Custom** from the list allows you to enter values for the **X-Position** and **Y-Position** coordinates directly.

You can also change the stamp position by dragging the stamp in the preview window.

Rotation

Specifies the angle of rotation for the stamp. The angle can be set by entering the number of degrees.

Negative values rotate the stamp clockwise.

Note

- **Rotation** is enabled only when **Text** or **Date/Time/User Name** is selected for **Stamp Type** on the **Stamp** tab.

Note

- Click **Defaults** to set the stamp position to **Center** and the rotation to "0."

Save settings Tab

The **Save settings** tab allows you to register a new stamp or delete an unnecessary stamp.

Title

Enter the title to save the stamp you created.

Up to 64 characters can be entered.

Note

- Spaces, tabs, and returns cannot be entered at the beginning or end of a title.

Stamps

Shows a list of saved stamp titles.

Specify a title to display the corresponding stamp in **Title**.

Save/Save overwrite

Saves the stamp.

Enter a title in **Title**, and then click this button.

Delete

Deletes an unnecessary stamp.

Specify the title of an unnecessary stamp from the **Stamps** list, and click this button.

Note

- Depending on the environment, **Stamp** may not be available.

Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order

You can also set the number of copies on the **Basic Settings** tab.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

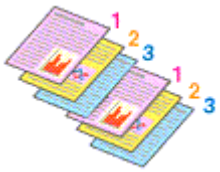
2. Specify the number of copies to be printed

   For **Copies** on the **Page Setup** tab, specify the number of copies to be printed.

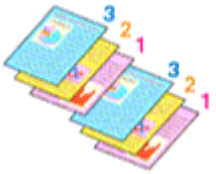
3. Specify the print order

   Check the **Print from Last Page** check box when you want to print from the last page in order, and uncheck the check box when you want to print from the first page.
   Check the **Collate** check box when you are printing multiple copies of a document and want to print out all pages in each copy together. Uncheck this check box when you want to print all pages with the same page number together.

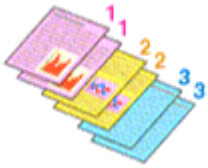
   - **Print from Last Page**: ☑ /**Collate**: ☑

   - **Print from Last Page**: ☐ /**Collate**: ☑

   - **Print from Last Page**: ☑ /**Collate**: ☐

   - **Print from Last Page**: ☐ /**Collate**: ☐

4. Click **OK**

   When you perform print, the specified number of copies will be printed with the specified printing order.

Important

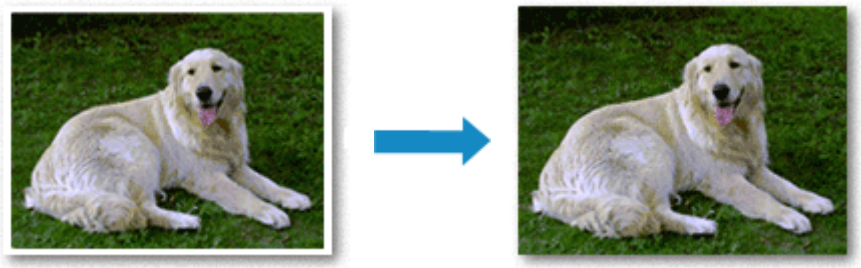
- When the application software that you used to create the document has the same function, specify the settings on the printer driver. However, if the print results are not acceptable, specify the function settings on the application software. When you specify the number of copies and the printing order with both the application software and this printer driver, the number of copies may be multiplied numbers of the two settings or the specified printing order may not be enabled.

Note

- By setting both **Print from Last Page** and **Collate**, you can perform printing so that papers are collated one by one starting from the last page.

Perform Borderless Printing

The borderless printing function allows you to print data without any margin by enlarging the data so that it extends slightly off the paper. In standard printing, margins are created around the document area. However, in borderless printing function, these margins are not created. When you want to print data such as a photo without providing any margin around it, set borderless printing.



You can also set borderless printing on the **Basic Settings** Tab.

Note

- You can also set **Amount of extension** on the operation panel of the printer, but the settings on the printer driver will be prioritized.

Setting Borderless Printing

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set borderless printing

   Add a checkmark to **Borderless Printing** on the **Page Setup** tab.

   Click **OK** when the confirmation message appears.
   When a message prompting you to change the media type appears, select a media type from the list and click **OK**.

3. Check the paper size

   Check the **Page Size** list. When you want to change it, select another page size from the list. The list displays only sizes that can be used for borderless printing.

4. Adjust the amount of extension from the paper

   If necessary, adjust the amount of extension using the **Amount of Extension** slider.
   Moving the slider to the right increases the amount extending off the paper, and moving the slider to the left decreases the amount.
   It is recommended to set the slider at the second position from the right for most cases.

Important

- When the **Amount of Extension** slider is set to the rightmost position, the back side of the paper may become smudged.

5. Click **OK**

   When you perform print, the data is printed without any margins on the paper.

Important

- When a page size that cannot be used for borderless printing is selected, the size is automatically changed to the valid page sizes for borderless printing.
- Depending on the type of the media used during borderless printing, the print quality may deteriorate at the top and bottom of the sheet or stains may form.
- When the ratio of the height to the width differs from the image data, a portion of the image may not be printed depending on the size of the media used.
  In this case, crop the image data with an application software according to the paper size.

Note

- When **Plain Paper** is selected for **Media Type** on the **Media/Quality** tab, borderless printing is not recommended. Therefore, the message for media selection appears.
  When you are using plain paper for test printing, select **Plain Paper**, and click **OK**.

Expanding the Range of the Document to Print

Setting a large amount of extension allows you to perform borderless printing with no problems. However, the portion of the document extending off the paper range will not be printed and for this reason, the subjects around the perimeter of a photo may not be printed.

When you are not satisfied with the result of borderless printing, reduce the amount of extension. The extension amount decreases as the **Amount of Extension** slider is moved to the left.

Important

- When the amount of extension is decreased, an unexpected margin may be produced on the print, depending on the size of the paper.

Note

- When the **Amount of Extension** slider is set to the leftmost position, image data will be printed in the full size. If you set this when printing the address side of a postcard, the postal code of the sender is printed in the correct position.
- When **Preview before printing** is checked on the **Media/Quality** tab, you can confirm whether there will be no margin before printing.

Page Layout Printing

The page layout printing function allows you to print more than one page image on a single sheet of paper.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set page layout printing

   Select a page layout number from **1 on 1** to **16 on 1** from the **Page Layout** list on the **Page Setup** tab.
   The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.

3. Select the print paper size

   Select the size of the paper loaded in the printer from the **Printer Paper Size** list.

4. Set the number of pages to be printed on one sheet and the page order

   If necessary, click **Preferences...**, specify the following settings in the **Page Layout Printing** dialog box, and click **OK**.

   Page Order
   To change the page arrangement order, select a placement method from the list.

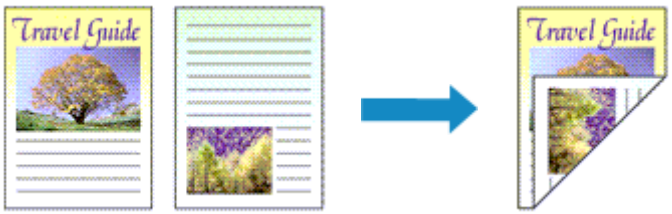
   Page Border
   To print a page border around each document page, check this check box.

   Exclude single page documents from Page Layout Printing
   If you add a checkmark, single-page documents are printed on a single sheet without performing Page Layout Printing.

5. Complete the setup

   Click **OK** on the **Page Setup** tab.
   When you perform print, the specified number of pages will be arranged on each sheet of paper in the specified order.

Duplex Printing



You can also set duplex printing in the **Basic Settings** tab.

Performing Automatic Duplex Printing

You can perform the duplex printing without having to turn over the paper.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set automatic duplex printing

   Select **2-sided Printing** for **1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing** on the **Page Setup** tab.

3. Select the layout

   Select the layout you want to use from the **Page Layout** list.

4. Specify the side to be stapled

   The best **Binding Location** is selected automatically from the **Orientation** and **Page Layout** settings.
   To change the setting, select another stapling side from the **Binding Location** list.

5. Set the margin width

   If necessary, click **Specify Margin...** and set the margin width, and then click **OK**.

6. Complete the setup

   Click **OK** on the **Page Setup** tab.
   When you perform print, duplex printing will be started.

Performing Duplex Printing Manually

You can perform the duplex printing manually.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set duplex printing

   Select **2-sided Printing** from **1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing** on the **Page Setup** tab. Check the **Manual 2-sided Printing** check box.

3. Select the layout

   Select the layout you want to use from the **Page Layout** list.

4. Specify the side to be stapled

   The best **Binding Location** is selected automatically from the **Orientation** and **Page Layout** settings. To change the setting, select another stapling side from the **Binding Location** list.

5. Set the margin width

   If necessary, click **Specify Margin...** and set the margin width, and then click **OK**.

6. Complete the setup

   Click **OK** on the **Page Setup** tab.
   When you perform print, the document is first printed on one side of a sheet of paper. After one side is printed, reload the paper correctly according to the message.
   Press the **OK** button on the printer to print the opposite side.

Important

- Automatic duplex printing can be performed only when one of the following paper sizes is selected from **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** tab.
  - **Letter 8.5"x11" 22x28cm**, **A4**
- After printing the front page, there is an ink drying wait time before starting to print the back page (Operation stops temporarily). Do not touch the paper during this time. You can change the ink drying wait time at **Other Settings** in the Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool.

Note

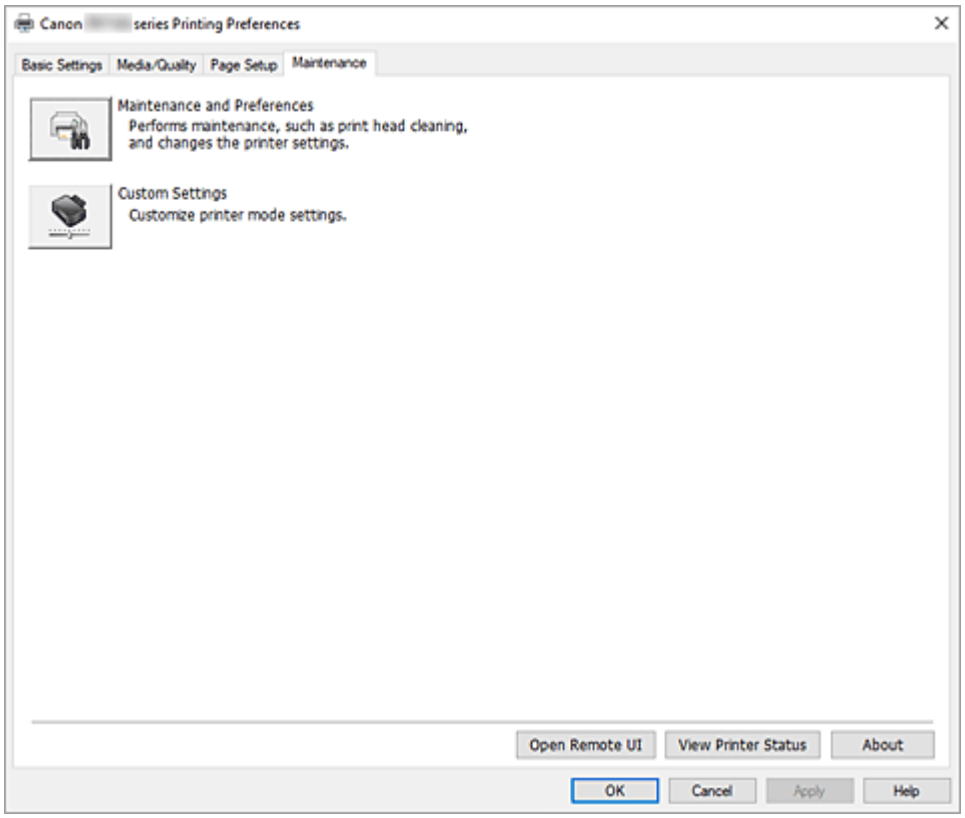
- If the back side of the paper becomes smudged during duplex printing, perform **Bottom Plate Cleaning** in the Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool.
- Unless head position adjustment is performed after an ink cartridge is loaded or replaced, the intended print results may not be obtained during automatic duplex printing. If the print results are not satisfactory, refer to "Adjusting Print Head Position" and adjust the head position.

Related Topic

- Cleaning Inside the Printer

Maintenance Tab Description

The **Maintenance** tab allows you to start the Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool or check the status of the printer.



Maintenance and Preferences

Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool is started.

You can perform printer maintenance or change the settings of the printer.

Custom Settings

Opens the **Custom Settings** dialog box.

Perform this function to change the settings of this printer.

Note

- If the printer is off or if communication between the printer and the computer is disabled, an error message may appear because the computer cannot collect the printer status.
  If this happens, click **OK** to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.

Open Remote UI

Menu for performing printer maintenance and changing settings.

View Printer Status

Starts the Canon IJ Status Monitor.

Perform this function when you want to check the printer status and how a print job is proceeding.

About

Opens the **About** dialog box.

The version of the printer driver, plus a copyright notice, can be checked.

In addition, the language to be used can be switched.

Custom Settings dialog box

When you click **Custom Settings**, the **Custom Settings** dialog box is displayed.
If necessary, switch between various modes of printer operation.

Rotate 90 degrees left when orientation is [Landscape]

On the **Page Setup** tab, you can change the rotation direction of the **Landscape** in the **Orientation**.

To rotate the print data 90 degrees to the left during printing, check this check box.

Important

- Do not change this setting while the print job is displayed in the print wait list. Otherwise, characters may be omitted or the layout may become corrupt.

Note

- If **Envelope Com 10**, **Envelope DL**, **Yougata 4 4.13"x9.25"**, or **Yougata 6 3.86"x7.48"** is selected for **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** tab, the printer rotates the paper 90 degrees to the left to print, regardless of the **Rotate 90 degrees left when orientation is [Landscape]** setting.

Do not detect mismatched paper settings when printing from a computer

When you print documents from your computer, the paper settings in the printer driver and the paper information registered on the printer do not match, this setting disables the message display and allows you to continue printing.

To enable detection of paper setting mismatches, uncheck this check box.

About dialog box

When you click **About**, the **About** dialog box is displayed.
This dialog box displays the version, copyright, and module list of the printer driver. You can select the language to be used and switch the language displayed in the setup window.

Modules

Lists the printer driver modules.

Language

Specifies the language you wish to use in the printer driver setup window.

Important

- If the font for displaying the language of your choice is not installed in your system, the characters will be garbled.

Settings for Data Sending

If you click **Settings for Data Sending**, the **Settings for Data Sending** dialog box will be displayed.

If it includes data you do not agree to sending, uncheck this check box.

Note

- Some printer functions can be set only from the **Maintenance** tab of **Printer properties**.

Overview of the Printer Driver

- **Canon IJ Printer Driver**
  - Opening Printer Driver's Setup Screen
- **Canon IJ Status Monitor**
  - Checking Ink Status from Your Computer
- **Instructions for Use (Printer Driver)**

Canon IJ Printer Driver

The Canon IJ printer driver (simply called printer driver below) is software that you install onto your computer so that it can communicate with the printer.

The printer driver converts the print data created by your application software into data that your printer can understand, and sends the converted data to the printer.

Because different models support different print data formats, you need a printer driver for the specific model you are using.

Installing the Printer Driver

To install the printer driver, install the driver from the Setup CD-ROM or our website.

Specifying the Printer Driver

To specify the printer driver, open the **Print** dialog box of the application software you are using, and select "Canon XXX" (where "XXX" is your model name).

Displaying the Manual from the Printer Driver

To display the description of a setup tab from the printer driver's setup screen, click **Help** on that tab.

Related Topic

➡ Opening Printer Driver's Setup Screen

Opening Printer Driver's Setup Screen

You can display the printer driver's setup screen from your application software or by clicking the printer icon.

Displaying the Printer Driver's Setup Screen from Your Application Software

Perform this procedure to set up the print settings during printing.

1. Select print command from application software

   In general, select **Print** on the **File** menu to open the **Print** dialog box.

2. Select your printer model, and click **Preferences** (or **Properties**)

   The printer driver's setup screen appears.

Note

- Depending on the application software you are using, the command and menu names, and the number of steps may vary. For details, refer to the operating instructions of your application software.

Displaying the Printer Driver's Setup Screen by Clicking the Printer Icon

From the setup screen you can perform printer maintenance operations such as print head cleaning, or set print settings to be shared by all application software.

The following instructions are shown using screens displayed in Windows 11 as an example.

1. Select the **Settings** -> **Bluetooth & devices** -> **Printers & scanners**

2. Click your model name icon, and then select **Printing preferences** from the displayed menu

   The printer driver setup window appears.

   Note

   - If you're using Windows 10 or earlier, follow the steps below to display the printer driver settings screen.
     1. Select the **Control Panel** -> **Hardware and Sound** -> **Devices and Printers**
     2. Right-click your model name icon, and then select **Printing preferences** from the displayed menu

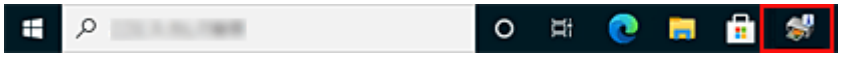
     Opening the printer driver setup window through **Printer properties** displays such tabs regarding the Windows functions as the **Ports** (or **Advanced**) tab. Those tabs do not appear when opening through **Printing preferences** or application software. For tabs regarding Windows functions, refer to the user's manual for the Windows.

Canon IJ Status Monitor

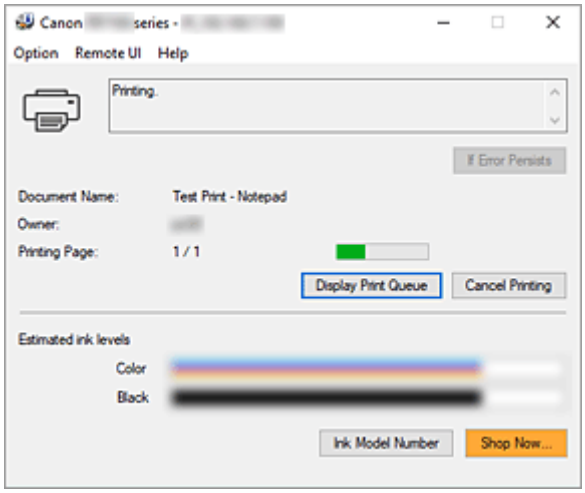
The Canon IJ Status Monitor displays the printer status and the printing progress. The printer status is shown by the images, icons, and messages in the status monitor.

Launching the Canon IJ Status Monitor

The Canon IJ Status Monitor launches automatically when print data is sent to the printer. When launched, the Canon IJ Status Monitor appears as a button on the task bar.



Click the button of the status monitor displayed on the task bar. The Canon IJ Status Monitor appears.



Note

- To open the Canon IJ Status Monitor when the printer is not printing, open the printer driver setup window and click **View Printer Status** on the **Maintenance** tab.
- The information displayed on the Canon IJ Status Monitor may differ depending on the country or region where you are using your printer.

When Errors Occur

The Canon IJ Status Monitor is automatically displayed if an error occurs (e.g., if the printer runs out of paper or if the ink is low).

In such cases, take the appropriate action as described.

Related Topic

- Canon IJ Status Monitor Description

Checking Ink Status from Your Computer

You can check the remaining ink level and the FINE cartridge types for your model.

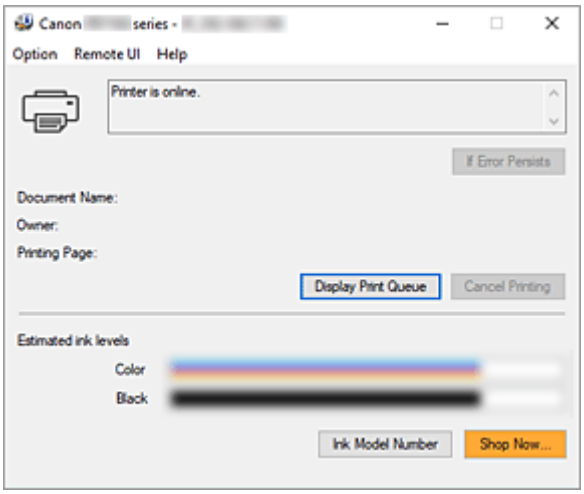
1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Launching the Canon IJ Status Monitor

   On the **Maintenance** tab, click **View Printer Status**.

3. Display **Estimated ink levels**

   Ink status is displayed as an illustration.



Instructions for Use (Printer Driver)

This printer driver is subject to the following restrictions. Keep the following points in mind when using the printer driver.

Restrictions on the Printer Driver

- With some applications, the **Copies** setting in the **Page Setup** tab of the printer driver may not be enabled.
  In this case, use the copies setting in the **Print** dialog box of the application software.
- If the selected **Language** in the **About** dialog box displayed in the **Maintenance** tab of **Printer properties** does not match the operating system interface language, the printer driver setup window may not be displayed properly.
- Do not change the **Advanced** tab items of the printer properties. If you change any of the items, you will not be able to use the following functions correctly.
  Also, if **Print to file** is selected in the **Print** dialog box of the application software and with applications that prohibit EMF spooling, the following functions will not operate.
  - **Preview before printing** on the **Media/Quality** tab
  - **Prevention of Print Data Loss** in the **Print Options** dialog box on the **Page Setup** tab
  - **Manual 2-sided Printing** when **2-sided Printing** is selected from **1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing** on the **Page Setup** tab
  - **Booklet Printing** in **1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing** on the **Page Setup** tab
  - **Print from Last Page**, **Collate**, **Specify Margin...**, and **Stamp...** on the **Page Setup** tab
- Since the resolution in the preview display differs from the printing resolution, text and lines in the preview display may appear different from the actual print result.
- With some applications, the printing is divided into multiple print jobs.
  To cancel printing, delete all divided print jobs.
- If image data is not printed correctly, display the **Print Options** dialog box from the **Page Setup** tab and change the setting of **Disable ICM required from the application software**. This may solve the problem.
- If you are using a model that has a card slot, the card slot of the printer may become inaccessible. In such cases, restart the printer or turn it off and reconnect the USB cable.

Points to Note About Applications with Restrictions

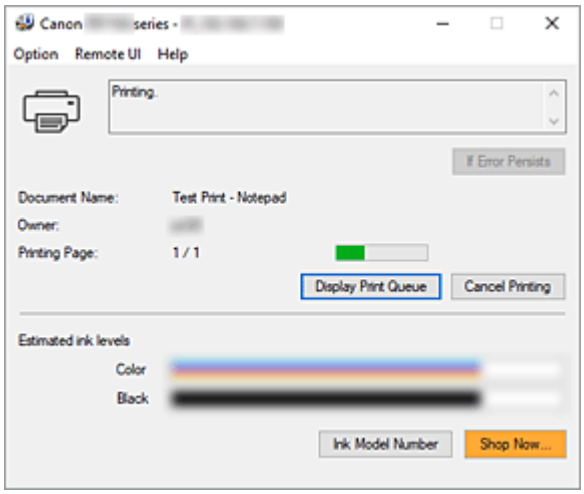
- There are following restrictions in Microsoft Word (Microsoft Corporation).
  - When Microsoft Word has the same printing functions as the printer driver, use Word to specify them.
  - When a setting from **2 on 1** to **16 on 1** or **Zoom** is used for **Page Layout** on the **Page Setup** tab of the printer driver, the document may not print normally in certain versions of Word.
  - When **Page Size** in Word is set to "XXX Enlarge/Reduce," the document may not print normally in certain versions of Word.
    If this happens, follow the procedure below.
    1. Open Word's **Print** dialog box.
    2. Open the printer driver setup window, and on the **Page Setup** tab, set **Page Size** to the same paper size that you specified in Word.

3. Set **Booklet Printing** in **Page Layout** or **1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing** according to your requirements.
4. Click **OK** to close the window.
5. Without starting printing, close the **Print** dialog box.
6. Open Word's **Print** dialog box again.
7. Open the printer driver setup window and click **OK**.
8. Start printing.

- If bitmap printing is enabled in Adobe Illustrator (Adobe Incorporated), printing may take time or some data may not be printed. Print after unchecking the **Bitmap Printing** check box in the **Print** dialog box.

Canon IJ Status Monitor Description

The Canon IJ Status Monitor displays the printer status and the printing progress. The printer status is shown by the images, icons, and messages in the status monitor.



Features of the Canon IJ Status Monitor

The Canon IJ Status Monitor has the following functions:

Onscreen display of printer status

The status monitor displays the printer status in real-time.
You can check the progress of each document to be printed (print job).

Display of error content and correction procedure

The status monitor displays information on any errors that occur on the printer.
You can then immediately check what sort of action to perform.

Ink status display

Displays the ink status.
FINE cartridge types and ink levels can be confirmed.

Overview of the Canon IJ Status Monitor

The Canon IJ Status Monitor uses images, icons, and messages to display the printer status and the ink status.
During printing, you can check information about the document being printed and the print progress.
If an error occurs, the status monitor displays the error content and instructions on how to correct the error. Follow the message instructions.

Printer

Canon IJ Status Monitor shows an icon when a warning or error occurs to the printer.

: There is a warning.

: There has been an operator error.

: There is a notice about something other than a warning or an error.

: There has been an error which requires a service.

If Error Persists

If a warning or an error occurs, you can click the button.

A description of the warning or error will be displayed.

Document Name

Name of the document being printed.

Owner

Owner's name of the document being printed.

Printing Page

Page number of current page and the total page count.

Display Print Queue

The print queue, which controls the current document and documents waiting to be printed.

Cancel Printing

Cancels printing.

Estimated ink levels

Displays FINE cartridge types and estimated ink levels as images.

Also, if the remaining ink is low or empty, an icon or a message will appear (Ink level warning / Ink empty error).

The colors are calibrated to match the color with the least amount of ink remaining, and then all colors are displayed at the same level.

Ink Model Number

You can look up the correct FINE cartridge for your printer.

Option Menu

If a printer message appears, select **Enable Status Monitor** to start the Canon IJ Status Monitor.

Select **Enable Status Monitor** to use the following commands:

Always Display Current Job

Displays the Canon IJ Status Monitor whenever a document is being printed.

Always Display on Top

Displays the Canon IJ Status Monitor in front of other windows.

Display Guide Message

Displays guide messages for complicated paper setting operations.

Envelope Printing

Displays a guide message when envelope printing starts.

To hide this guide message, select the **Do not show this message again** check box.

To display the guide message again, open the **Option** menu, select **Display Guide Message**, click **Envelope Printing**, and enable this setting.

How to load paper

Displays a guide message if the other guide is not displayed when the printer begins printing for media types other than plain paper.

To hide this guide message, select the **Do not show this message again** check box.

To display the guide message again, click How to load paper on the **Display Guide Message** in the **Option** menu and enable this setting.

Display Firmware Update Notifications

Displays firmware update notifications.
If there's a firmware update available, a dialog box is displayed when you start printing.
If you add a check mark to **Do not show this message again** in this dialog box, you can prevent it from displaying again.

Start when Windows is Started

Automatically starts the Canon IJ Status Monitor when Windows is started.

Remote UI menu

You are able to open the printer's Remote User Interface.
You are able to check the printer status and run maintenance functions on the printer when connected to and using it through a network.

Note

- When the printer is being used via USB connection **Remote UI** will not display.

Printer Information

Allows you to check detailed information, such as the printer status, the print progress, and remaining ink levels.

Maintenance

Allows you to run printer maintenance and change printer settings.

Download Security Certificate

Displays the **For secure communication** window.
This window allows you to download the route certificate, register it to the browser, and disable warning displays.

Help Menu

Select this menu to display Help information for the Canon IJ Status Monitor including version and copyright information.

Related Topic

Canon IJ Status Monitor

Updating the Driver

Drivers include a printer driver and MP Drivers. The MP Drivers include a printer driver, ScanGear (scanner driver), and fax driver.
By updating the Driver to the latest version of the Driver, unresolved problems may be solved.

Important

- Check the following if you want to install or delete drivers.
  - Log on as a user who has the administrator account.
  - Terminate all running applications.

- Installing the Driver
- Deleting the Unnecessary Driver

Installing the Driver

1. Turn on the printer

2. Start the installer

   Double-click the icon of the downloaded file.
   The installation program starts.

3. Install the driver

   Take the appropriate action as described on the screen.

   If a confirmation screen appears during installation, check **Always trust software from "Canon Inc.".** and click **Install**.

4. Complete the installation

   Click **Exit**.

   Depending on the environment you are using, a message prompting you to restart the computer may be displayed. To complete the installation properly, restart the computer.

Important

- You can download the driver for free, but any Internet access charges incurred are your responsibility.

Deleting the Unnecessary Driver

The printer driver which you no longer use can be deleted.

1. Start the uninstaller

Select **Control Panel** -> **Programs** -> **Programs and Features**.
From the program list, select "Canon XXX Driver" (where "XXX" is your model name) and then click **Uninstall**.

The confirmation window for uninstalling the model appears.

2. Perform the uninstaller

Click **Start**. When the confirmation message appears, click **Yes**.
When all the files have been deleted, click **Complete**.

The deletion of the Driver is complete.

Printing from Application Software (macOS AirPrint)

- Printing Basic
- Perform Borderless Printing
- Printing on Postcards
- Adding Printer
- How to Open Printer Settings Screen
- Displaying the Printing Status Screen
- Deleting the Undesired Print Job
- Removing Printer That Is No Longer Required from List of Printers

Printing

This printer is compatible with the macOS standard printing system (AirPrint).
You can start printing right away after connecting this printer to your Mac without installing any special software.

Checking Your Environment

First, check your environment.

- AirPrint Operation Environment
  Mac running the latest version of OS
- Requirement
  The Mac and the printer must be connected by one of the following methods:
  - Connected to the same network over a **LAN**
  - Connected directly without wireless router (Direct Connection)
  - Connected by USB

Print from a Mac

1. Check that printer is turned on

   Note

   - If **Auto power on** is enabled, printer automatically turns itself on when receiving a print job.

2. Load paper in printer

3. Select paper size and paper type from printer

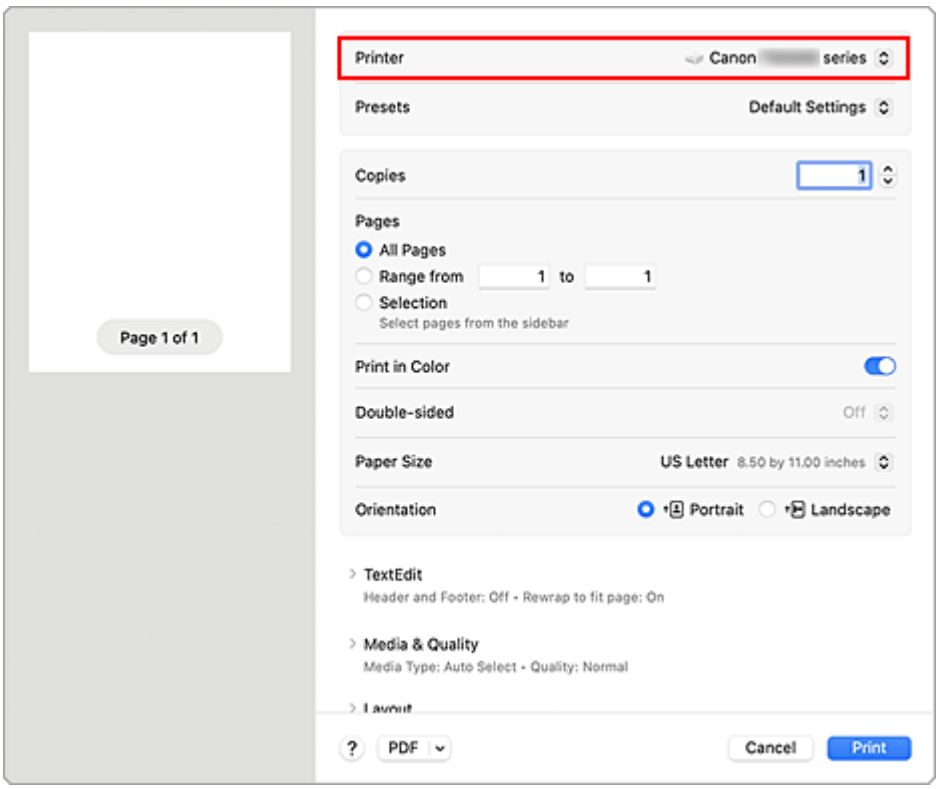
   Register the set paper size and paper type on the printer operation panel.
   For instructions, see "Paper Settings."

4. Start printing from your application software

   The print dialog opens.

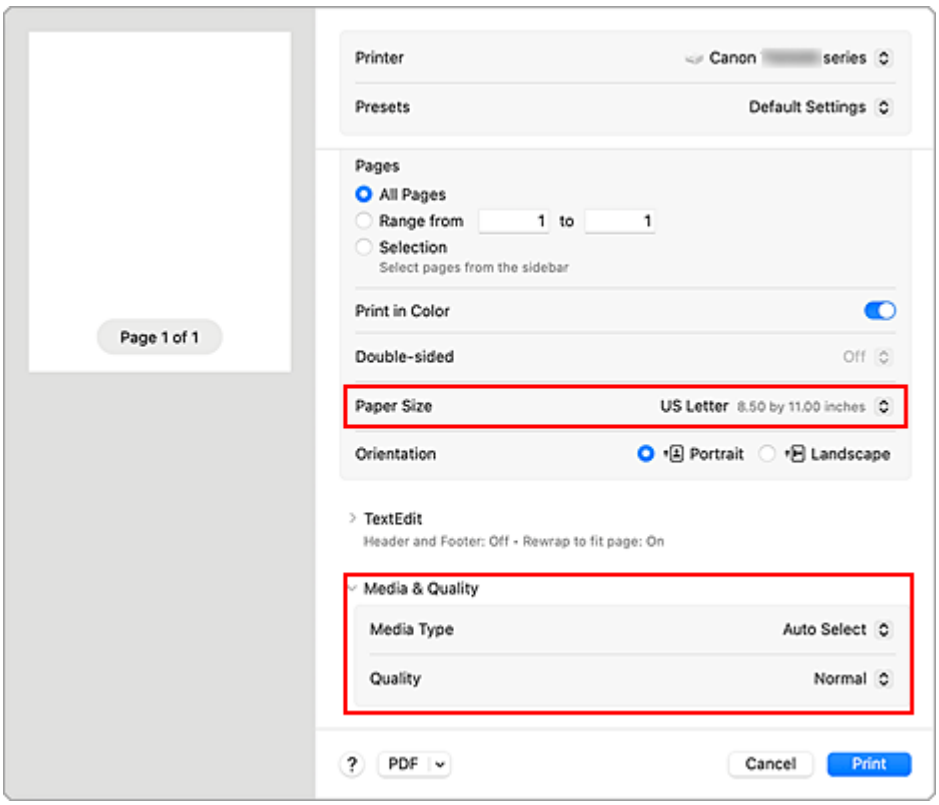
5. Select printer

   Select your model from the **Printer** list in the print dialog.



6. Check print settings

Set items such as **Paper Size** to the appropriate size, as well as **Media Type** from **Media & Quality**. Set **Double-sided** to **Off** if you are not printing on both sides of the paper.



Important

- An error may occur if the paper size set in the print dialog is different from the paper size registered on the printer. Select the correct items on the print dialog and the printer that correspond to the paper being printed.
- If printing paper such as photo paper and postcards that cannot be printed on both sides, set **Double-sided** to **Off**.

Note

- Use the print dialog to set general print settings such as the layout and the print sequence. For information about print settings, refer to macOS help.

7. Click **Print**

   The printer prints according to the specified settings.

Note

- It can take the Wi-Fi a few minutes to get connected after the printer turns on. Print after checking that the printer is connected to the network.
- You cannot print if Bonjour settings of printer are disabled. Check **LAN** settings of printer and enable Bonjour settings.
- Refer to "Cannot Print Using AirPrint" for printing problems.
- The display of the settings screen may differ depending on the application software you are using.

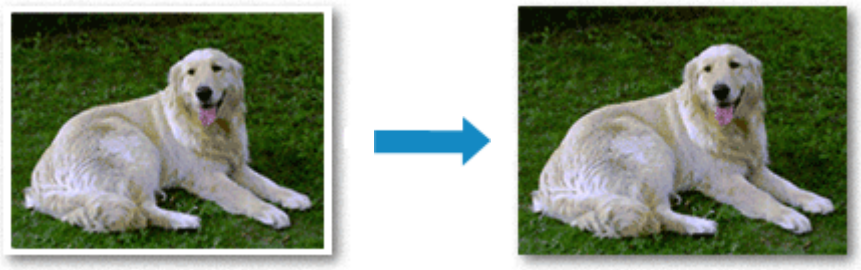
Printing of Envelopes

For printing on the envelope from a Mac, load the envelope in the correct orientation, and refer to the following.

Print result image	Orientation of print data
	 The print data is rotated by 180 degrees against the print result image.

Perform Borderless Printing

The borderless printing function allows you to print data without any margin by enlarging the data so that it extends slightly off the paper. In standard printing, margins are created around the document area. However, in borderless printing function, these margins are not created. When you want to print data such as a photo without providing any margin around it, set borderless printing.



The procedure for performing borderless printing is as follows:

Setting Borderless Printing

1. Set the **Amount of extension** on the printer operation panel

   For information on how to set the amount of extension, see "Print settings."

   Important

   - When the **Extended amount: Large** is set, the back side of the paper may become smudged.

2. Select sheet size for borderless printing

   Select "XXX Borderless" for **Paper Size** from the print dialog.

3. Click **Print**

   When you perform print, the data is printed without any margins on the paper.

Important

- Borderless printing only supports specific paper sizes. Make sure to select a paper size with the wording "Borderless" from the **Paper Size**.
- Print quality may deteriorate or the sheet may be stained at the top and bottom depending on the type of paper used.
- When the ratio of the height to the width differs from the image data, a portion of the image may not be printed depending on the size of the media used.
  In this case, crop the image data with an application software according to the paper size.
- When scaled printing or page layout printing is enabled, you cannot perform borderless printing.

Note

- The use of borderless printing is not recommended if **Plain Paper** is selected for **Media Type** in **Media & Quality**.

Expanding the Range of the Document to Print

Setting a large amount of extension allows you to perform borderless printing with no problems. However, the portion of the document extending off the paper range will not be printed and for this reason, the subjects around the perimeter of a photo may not be printed.

If you are not satisfied with the borderless printing results, reduce the amount of extension in printer operation panel.

Important

- When the amount of extension is decreased, an unexpected margin may be produced on the print, depending on the size of the paper.

Note

- When the **Amount: Minimum** is set, image data will be printed in the full size. If you set this when printing the address side of a postcard, the postal code of the sender is printed in the correct position.

Printing on Postcards

This section describes the procedure for printing on postcards.

1. Load postcards in printer

2. Select paper size and paper type from the printer

   Register **Hagaki (size)** for paper size from the printer operation panel.
   Also, register **IJ Hagaki**, **Hagaki K**, or **Hagaki (type)** for paper type, according to your purpose. When you print on the address side, register **Hagaki (type)**.

3. Select **Paper Size** and **Media Type** from the print dialog

   Select **Postcard** or **Postcard Borderless** for **Paper Size** from the print dialog. When you print on the address side, select **Postcard**.
   Select the Hagaki you want to use for **Media Type** in **Media & Quality** from the print dialog.

   Important

   - This printer cannot print on postcards that have photos or stickers attached.

4. Set **Double-sided** to **Off**

   Important

   - Two-sided printing is not possible for postcards, so set **Double-sided** to **Off**. If you print with **Double-sided** set to **On**, the printing result may not be as you intended.
   - You will get cleaner printing if you print the address side first and then print the message side.

5. Click **Print**

   The printer prints according to the specified settings.

Adding Printer

This section describes the procedure for adding a printer to your Mac.

To re-add a printer that was deleted, open **System Settings** -> **Printers & Scanners**, click **Add Printer, Scanner, or Fax...**, and then perform the procedure described below.

If your printer is connected via USB, and you connect the USB cable to a Mac, the printer is automatically added. The below procedure is not necessary in this case.

1. Check whether **Default** is selected in the displayed dialog

   Note

   - It may take a little time for your printer to appear.

2. Select the printer

   Select the printer labeled **Bonjour Multifunction** or **Bonjour**.

   Note

   - Check the following if printer does not appear.
     - Printer is on
     - Firewall function of the security software is off
     - In case of Wi-Fi connection: Printer is either connected to the wireless router or directly connected to the PC (Direct Connection)
     - In case of wired **LAN** connection: Printer is connected to the network device via **LAN** cable

3. Select your printer or **Secure AirPrint** from **Use**

4. Click **Add**

   The printer is added to your Mac.

How to Open Printer Settings Screen

The settings screen of the printer can be displayed from your application software.

Opening the Page Setup Dialog

Use this procedure to set the page (paper) settings before printing.

1. Select **Page Setup...** from the **File** menu of the application software

   The Page Setup dialog opens.

Opening the Print Dialog

Use this procedure to set the print settings before printing.

1. Select **Print...** from the **File** menu of the application software

   The print dialog opens.

Displaying the Printing Status Screen

Check the print progress according to the following procedure:

1. Launch the printing status screen

   - If the print data has been sent to the printer
     The printing status screen opens automatically. To display the printing status screen, click the printer icon displayed on the Dock.
   - If the print data has not been sent to the printer
     Open **System Settings**, and select **Printers & Scanners**.
     To display the printing status screen, select your printer model from the printer list, and then click **Printer Queue...**.

2. Check the printing status

   You can check the name of the file being printed or ready for being printed.

   Deletes the specified print job.

   Stops printing the specified document.

   Resumes printing the specified document.

   Stops printing all documents.

   Displayed only when printing of all documents is being stopped, and resumes printing all documents.

Important

- If an error occurs, an error message will appear on the printing progress confirmation screen.
- The content of the error message may differ depending on the OS version.
- The printer part names in the error message may differ from what is listed in this manual.
- When opening the Remote UI, you can check support numbers (error identification numbers) and detailed error information.

Deleting the Undesired Print Job

If the printer does not start printing, canceled or failed print job data may be remaining.
Delete unnecessary print jobs from the print status check screen.

1. Open **System Settings**, and select **Printers & Scanners**
2. Select your model, and then click **Printer Queue...**

   The print status check screen appears.
3. Select the unnecessary print job and click (Delete)

   The selected print jobs will be deleted.

Removing Printer That Is No Longer Required from List of Printers

The printer that is no longer in use can be removed from the list of printers.
Before removing the printer, remove the cable connecting the printer and PC.

You cannot remove the printer if you are not logged on as the administrator. For information about an administrative user, see **Users & Groups** from **System Settings**.

1. Open **System Settings**, and select **Printers & Scanners**

2. Delete printer from list of printers

   Select the printer you wish to remove from the list of printers and click **Remove Printer...**.

   Click **Remove Printer** when the confirmation message appears.

Copying

- Making Copies
- Reducing/Enlarging Copies
- Two-Sided Copying
- Special Copy Menu

Making Copies

This section describes the basic procedure to perform standard copying.

1. Check that printer is turned on.
2. Load paper.

   ➡ Supported Paper Sizes and Weights
3. Select **Copy** on the HOME screen.

   ➡ LCD and Operation Panel

   The Copy standby screen is displayed.
4. Load original on platen.
5. Specify the number of copies using the ▲▼ button.

6. Specify settings as necessary.

   The print setting screen is displayed when you press the **OK** button.

   ➡ Setting Items for Copying
7. Press the **Black** button or the **Color** button.

   The printer starts copying.

   Remove the original on the platen after copying is complete.

Important

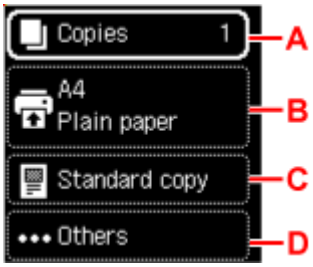
- Do not open the document cover or remove the original from the platen until scanning is completed.

Setting Items for Copying

You can change the copy settings such as magnification and intensity.

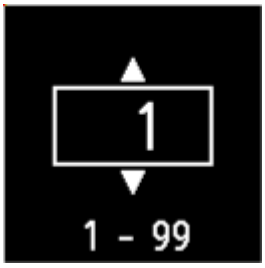
Note

- The setting currently specified appears in the selected state.
- Some setting items may not be able to be specified in combination with the setting of other setting items. is displayed in the setting item when setting that cannot be specified in the combined state is selected. Select the setting item, check the displayed message, and change the setting.



A: Number of copies

Specify the number of copies.



B: Paper settings

You can check the size and type of paper that is set currently.

C: Copy menu

- **Standard copy**

  You can copy images with the basic operations.

  ➡ Making Copies

- **ID card copy**

  You can copy both sides of a card sized original such as an ID card onto a single sheet of paper.

  ➡ Copying ID Card to Fit onto Single Page

- **Brdless copy**

  You can copy images so that they fill the entire page without borders.

  ➡ Copying without Borders

- **Frame erase**

  When copying thick originals such as books, you can make a copy without black margins around the image and gutter shadows.

  ➡ Copying Thick Originals Such as Books

D: Others

- 2-sided

  Select whether to perform two-sided copying.

  ➡ Two-Sided Copying

- Layout

  Select the layout.

  ➡ Copying Two Pages onto Single Page
  ➡ Copying Four Pages onto Single Page

- Copy intensity

  Change the intensity (brightness).

- Enlarge/Reduce

  Select the reduction/enlargement method.

  ➡ Reducing/Enlarging Copies

- Print quality

  Specify the print quality.

  Note

  - The **Quality: Draft** can be set when the paper type is normal paper.

Scanning

- Scanning and Saving to a Computer
- Scanning and Saving to Smartphone/Tablet
- Attaching Scanned Images to E-MAIL to Send

Scanning and Saving to a Computer

For Windows

- Scanning Easily
- Scanning According to Item Type or Purpose

For macOS

- Scanning Easily
- Scanning According to Item Type or Purpose

Other

- Scanning with Chromebook
- Using Operation Panel to Scan

Attaching Scanned Images to E-MAIL to Send

- **Sending Scanned Data as E-Mail from Computer**

Frequently Asked Questions

Top 6

Loading Paper >

Network Connection Setup Guide

Error Has Occurred

Network Communication Problems >

Ink Does Not Come Out >

Scanning Problems (Windows)

Search by Category

Error

- List of Support Codes for Printer Errors
- Message Is Displayed
- "1003" is displayed
- "1300" is displayed

Network

- Connecting to a Printer
- Solve Network Troubles with The Printer's Diagnostic Functions
- Cannot Find Printer on Network (Windows/macOS)
- Cannot Proceed Beyond Printer Connection Screen
- Connecting with Wireless Direct
- Change to Offline (Windows)/Cannot Communicate (Windows)/Cannot Print (Windows)
- Check the SSID and Encryption Key of the Wireless Router Connected to Your Computer or Smartphone

Printing

- What to Do When Paper Is Jammed
- Printer Does Not Print
- Resolving Print Quality Problems
- Blurry or Fuzzy
- Inaccurate or Bleeding Colors
- Lines Are Misaligned/Distorted

Scan

- Scanning Problems(Windows)
- Scanner Does Not Work(Windows)
- ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Does Not Start (Windows)
- Scan Utility Error Messages (Windows)
- ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Error Messages (Windows)
- Cannot Print (Scan) from Smartphone/Tablet

Security / Other

- Set Up/Manage Security
- Searching Printer by IP Address or Host Name During Setup
- Failed to MP Drivers (Printer Driver) Installation (Windows)
- Updating MP Drivers (Printer Driver) in Network Environment (Windows)
- Replacing a FINE Cartridge
- Printer Does Not Turn On

Questions not Listed Above

Error

- Cannot Use Previous App
- Software does not work on macOS 15 or later

Network

- Printing Network Setting Information
- Switching Printer's Connection to Network or Devices
- Network Key (Password) Unknown
- Cannot Remember Administrator Password of Printer
- Printer Cannot Be Used After Replacing Wireless Router or Changed Router Settings
- Message Appears on Computer During Setup
- Checking Network Information of Printer
- Restoring Printer's LAN Settings to Defaults
- USB Connection Problems
- Updating Printer Firmware
- Manual connect
- Network Solution 1-2-3

Printing

- Cannot Print Using AirPrint
- Printing (Copying) Stops
- Printer Does Not Pick Up or Feed the Paper/"No Paper" Error
- Automatic 2-sided Printing Problems
- Black Streaks

Scan

- Scanning Problems (macOS)
- Scan Results Are Unsatisfactory (Windows)
- Scan Results Are Unsatisfactory (macOS)

Security / Other

- Printer Does Not Turn On
- Settings/Maintenance
- Printer Turns Off Unexpectedly or Repeatedly
- Wrong Language Appears in Operation Panel
- Unable to use setup app in Microsoft Store

Operation Problems

Ask a question via chat Depending on your country or region, some services may not be available.

Network FAQ

Here are frequently asked questions on network. Select a connection method you are using, or you want to use.

Wi-Fi

Cannot Find Printer

- Cannot Find Printer on Network (Windows/macOS)
- Cannot Proceed Beyond Printer Connection Screen (Cannot Find Printer Connected via USB)
- Searching Printer by IP Address or Host Name During Setup
- Detect Same Printer Name
- Switching Printer's Connection to Network or Devices

Cannot Print or Connect

- Solve Network Troubles with The Printer's Diagnostic Functions
- Printer Cannot Be Used After Replacing Wireless Router or Changed Router Settings
- Cannot Connect Smartphone/Tablet to Wireless Router
- WPS (Router Button) Connection
- Switching Printer's Connection to Network or Devices
- Cannot Find Printer on Network (Windows/macOS)

LAN Setting Tips/Changing LAN Settings

- Network Key (Password) Unknown
- Cannot Remember Printer's Password
- Checking Network Information of Printer
- Restoring Printer's LAN Settings to Defaults
- Checking Wireless Router SSID/Key
- Checking Wireless Router Network Name (SSID) for Smartphone/Tablet
- Privacy Separator/SSID Separator/Network Separation Function
- Default Network Settings
- Switching Printer's Connection to Network or Devices
- Printing Network Settings
- Checking Status Code

Printing (Scanning) from Smartphone/Tablet

- Cannot Connect Smartphone/Tablet to Wireless Router
- Checking Wireless Router Network Name (SSID) for Smartphone/Tablet
- Cannot Print (Scan) from Smartphone/Tablet

Problems while Using Printer

- Message Appears on Computer During Setup
- Cannot Find Printer on Network (Windows/macOS)

Wireless Direct

Cannot Print or Connect

- Solve Network Troubles with The Printer's Diagnostic Functions
- Cannot Find Printer on Network (Windows/macOS)

LAN Setting Tips/Changing LAN Settings

- Network Key (Password) Unknown
- Cannot Remember Printer's Password
- Checking Network Information of Printer
- Restoring Printer's LAN Settings to Defaults
- Default Network Settings
- Printing Network Settings
- Switching Printer's Connection to Network or Devices
- Checking Status Code

Printing (Scanning) from Smartphone/Tablet

- Cannot Print (Scan) from Smartphone/Tablet

Problems while Using Printer

- Message Appears on Computer During Setup
- Cannot Find Printer on Network (Windows/macOS)

Network Communication Problems

- Cannot Find Printer on Network (Windows/macOS)
- Wireless Router Problems
- Printer Settings/Smartphone/Tablet Troubles for Network

Cannot Find Printer on Network (Windows/macOS)

Note

- If you are using macOS 15 or later, you must configure each application to allow device discovery on the local network. Failing to enable device discovery may restrict software functionality or prevent it from starting properly.
  For detailed instructions, refer to "Setting Up Local Network Device Discovery."

- **Cannot Find Printer on Network**
- **Cannot Proceed Beyond Printer Connection Screen (Cannot Find Printer Connected via USB)**
- **Searching Printer by IP Address or Host Name During Setup**

Cannot Find Printer on Network

Important

- Make sure the following four items first.
  - If the security settings on the wireless router are enabled, to disable the settings may solve the problem.

    ➡ Privacy Separator/SSID Separator/Network Separation Function
  - If the printer does not support 5 GHz, enable 2.4 GHz on the wireless router.
  - To disable Band Steering function* of wireless router may solve the problem.
  - If the same SSID is assigned for 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz, to assign different SSID may solve the problem.

    * Band Steering function: Band Steering monitors a Wi-Fi network and automatically assigns devices to their optimal frequency band within 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz frequency bands depending on the situation.

In the following cases, set up the printer again.

- When you buy a new computer or wireless router
- When you change the settings on your wireless router
- When the connection method (Wi-Fi / USB) of the printer is changed

For more on the setup procedure;

➡ Set Up

In Other Cases Than Above:

If the printer suddenly stops working, even though you have not changed the settings of the device or network to which it is connected, or if you cannot find the printer during the setup process, check and solve the problem, using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant. After the condition improves, redo the setup of the printer.

Wi-Fi Connection Assistant is a powerful solution tool for network problems.

Step 1 Check Basic Items for Network.

Step 2 Solve Problems, Using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

Step 3 If the Solution Tool Does Not Solve the Problem.

Step 1 : Check Basic Items for Network.

Check 1 Check power status.

Check your printer and the network device (wireless router, etc.) are turned on.

If you are in the process of setting up, interrupt it and check if the wireless router (modem) is turned on and then check if the printer is turned on.

1. Check if network device such as router is turned on.

   If network devices are not turned on, turn on the power. If the network devices are on, turn them off and on again.

   It may take a while for the network device to become ready for use once they are turned on.

   Proceed once the network device such as router is ready for use.

2. Check if printer is turned on.

   If printer is not turned on, turn on the power. If the printer is on, turn it off and on again.

Proceed once you complete checking the power status above.

Check 2 Check PC network connection.

If your computer and network devices (wireless router, etc.) are fully configured, your computer is ready to connect to the network.

1. Check the settings of the network device (wireless router, etc.).

   Connect to the Internet and see if you can browse any web page. If you cannot view web pages on your computer, check wireless router network connection settings, such as IP address filtering, MAC address filtering, and DHCP function.

   To check the network name (SSID) of the wireless router the printer is connected to, print the network settings.

   ➡ Printing Network Settings

   Note

   - Depending on the wireless router, note that different network name (SSID) is assigned for a bandwidth (2.4 GHz or 5 GHz) or its usage (for PC or game machine), using alphanumeric characters at the end of network name (SSID).
   - For more on checking the settings of the wireless router, refer to the instruction manual supplied with the wireless router or contact the manufacturer.

   If you use an encryption key, specify it for the network name (SSID) you are using. For details, see Setting an Encryption Key.

2. Check PC network connection.

For the procedures, refer to the instruction manual supplied with the computer, or contact the manufacturer.

Once you complete setting up the wireless router and your computer, configure the settings on your computer in order to view web pages, using the information of the wireless router.

Proceed once you complete checking the network connection above.

Check 3 Check printer's network settings.

➡ For Wi-Fi

For Wi-Fi

Make sure the icon is displayed on the lower left of the **HOME** screen.

If icon is displayed.

icon indicates that the wireless router and the printer are not connected. Check the setting of printer. Reconsider the location of the wireless router and the printer in the next check.

If Easy wireless connect button (Easy wireless connect) is on.

"Easy wireless connect" is waiting for setup. Connect a device to the printer with the application on computer, smartphone or tablet.

If or icon is displayed.

The printer is not set to use Wi-Fi.

Select **Settings** on **HOME** screen > **LAN settings** > **Wi-Fi** in this order, and select **Enable** for **Advanced mode**.

If **Advanced mode** is not displayed, re-set up the printer.

➡ Set Up

Check 4 Check location of wireless router.

Make sure the printer is not placed too far away from the wireless router.

The printer can be up 50 m (164 ft.) from the wireless router indoors if unobstructed. Make sure the printer is close enough to the wireless router to be used.

Place the printer and wireless router where there are no obstacles between them. Wireless communication between different rooms or floors is generally poor. Wireless communication can be impeded by building materials containing metal or concrete. If the printer cannot communicate with the computer over a Wi-Fi due to a wall, place the printer and the computer in the same room.

In addition, if a device like a microwave oven that emits radio waves of the same frequency bandwidth as a wireless router is nearby, it may cause interference. Place the wireless router as far away from interference sources as possible.

Step 2 : Solve Problems, Using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

Diagnose and repair the network connections using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

Download Wi-Fi Connection Assistant from the below page, and install it on your computer.

➡ Checking Printer Connection Status Using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

Refer to below in regard to starting up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

- **For Windows:**

  ➡ Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

- **For macOS:**

  ➡ Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

Step 3 : If the Solution Tool Does Not Solve the Problem.

Check 1 Make sure security software's firewall is off.

If your security software's firewall is on, a message may appear warning you that Canon software is attempting to access the network. If this warning message appears, set security software to always allow access.

If you are using any programs that switch between network environments, check their settings.

Check 2 If printer is connected to AirPort Base Station via LAN, make sure you use alphanumeric characters only for network name (SSID). (macOS)

If your network name (SSID) contains characters other than single-byte alphanumeric characters, the connection is not established properly. Change the network name (SSID) to use only single-byte alphanumeric characters.

Check 3 Solve network troubles with the printer's diagnostic functions.

See below.

➡ Solve Network Troubles with The Printer's Diagnostic Functions

Check 4 Check that **Enable bidirectional support** is selected in **Ports** sheet of **Printer properties** dialog box (Windows).

If not, select it to enable bidirectional support.

Related Topics

➡ Network Communication Problems

Wireless Router Problems

- **Network Key (Password) Unknown**
- **Checking Wireless Router SSID/Key**
- **Printer Cannot Be Used After Replacing Wireless Router or Changed Router Settings**
- **WPS (Router Button) Connection**
- **Privacy Separator/SSID Separator/Network Separation Function**

Note

- This web page contains information about several models. Depending on the specifications of the printer you are using, some of the features described (device functions, connection method, operating procedure and etc.) may not apply. For details about the functions of your printer, see Product Specifications.

Network Key (Password) Unknown

Diagnose and repair the network connections using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

Download Wi-Fi Connection Assistant from the below page, and install it on your computer.

➡ Checking Printer Connection Status Using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

Refer to below in regard to starting up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

- **For Windows:**
  - ➡ Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant
- **For macOS:**
  - ➡ Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

If the problem persists after diagnosis and repair with Wi-Fi Connection Assistant, check the following items.

➡ WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Key Set for Wireless Router Unknown, Cannot Connect
➡ Setting an Encryption Key

Q WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Key Set for wireless router Unknown, Cannot Connect

A

Check the wireless router settings. For more on setting up a wireless router, see the instruction manual provided with the wireless router or contact its manufacturer. Make sure your computer can communicate with the wireless router.

Q Setting an Encryption Key

A

Select the encryption containing WPA2.

Note

- The factory default of wireless router supporting WPA3 may be set to WPA3.

Make sure your computer can communicate with the wireless router using the settings you have selected. For more on setting up a wireless router, see the instruction manual provided with the wireless router or contact its manufacturer.

- **Using WPA2/WPA3**

  The authentication method, Wi-Fi password, and dynamic encryption type must be identical among the wireless router, the printer, and your computer.

Enter the Wi-Fi password configured on the wireless router.

AES (more secure encryption than TKIP) is selected as the dynamic encryption method. The printer does not support TKIP If the wireless router settings are set to "TKIP only", you will not be able to connect to the printer.

For details, see Check the SSID and Encryption Key of the Wireless Router Connected to Your Computer or Smartphone.

Note

- This printer supports the following.
  - WPA-PSK (WPA-Personal)
  - WPA2-PSK (WPA2-Personal)
  - WPA3-SAE (WPA3-Personal)
- Some printers support IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise). To configure IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise), you also need to configure the authentication (Radius) server.

  Contact the network administrator for more information.
- This web page contains information about several models. Depending on the specifications of the printer you are using, some of the features described (device functions, connection method, operating procedure and etc.) may not apply. For details about the functions of your printer, see Product Specifications.

Printer Cannot Be Used After Replacing Wireless Router or Changed Router Settings

When wireless router is replaced or router settings are changed, the network settings of your computer, smartphone/tablet or printer must be reconfigured according to the new wireless router.

Check 1 Check if your computer or smartphone/tablet can be connected to Internet through the new wireless router.

If your computer or smartphone/tablet cannot be connected to Internet, check if the wireless router setup is completed and configure the settings on the computer or smartphone/tablet to connect to the wireless router.

Check 2 Restart printer network.

Refer to Setup Guide to setup.

Note

- Wi-Fi Connection Assistant allows you to diagnose and repair the network status.

  Select the link below to download Wi-Fi Connection Assistant and install it.

  ➡ Checking Printer Connection Status Using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

  Refer to below in regard to starting up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

  – For Windows:

  ➡ Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

  – For macOS:

  ➡ Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

If this does not solve the problem, see below.

- ➡ Cannot Communicate with Printer After Enabling MAC/IP Address Filtering or Encryption Key on wireless router
- ➡ With Encryption On, Cannot Communicate with Printer After Changing Encryption Type at Wireless Router
- ➡ Privacy Separator/SSID Separator/Network Separation Function

Q Cannot Communicate with Printer After Enabling MAC/IP Address Filtering or Encryption Key on wireless router

A

Check 1 Check wireless router setting.

For more on setting up a wireless router, see the instruction manual provided with the wireless router or contact its manufacturer. Make sure your computer can communicate with the wireless router.

Check 2 If filtering MAC addresses or IP addresses at wireless router, check that MAC addresses or IP addresses for computer, network device, and printer are registered.

Check 3 If using WPA/WPA2/WPA3 key or a password, make sure encryption key for computer, network device, and printer matches key set for wireless router.

The length or format of the Wi-Fi password and authentication method must be identical among the wireless router, the printer, and your computer.

For details, see Setting an Encryption Key.

Note

- Some printers support IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise). To configure IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise), you also need to configure the authentication (Radius) server.

  Contact the network administrator for more information.

Q With Encryption On, Cannot Communicate with Printer After Changing Encryption Type at wireless router

A

If the printer cannot communicate with the computer after you change the encryption type for the wireless router, make sure the encryption type and passkey or password for the computer matches that of the wireless router.

➡ Cannot Communicate with Printer After Enabling MAC/IP Address Filtering or Encryption Key on wireless router

Note

- This web page contains information about several models. Depending on the specifications of the printer you are using, some of the features described (device functions, connection method, operating procedure and etc.) may not apply. For details about the functions of your printer, see Product Specifications.

Printer Settings/Smartphone/Tablet Troubles for Network

- Solve Network Troubles with The Printer's Diagnostic Functions
- Checking Network Information of Printer
- Checking Status Code
- Printing Network Settings
- Restoring Printer's LAN Settings to Defaults
- Default Network Settings
- Connecting with Wireless Direct

Solve Network Troubles with The Printer's Diagnostic Functions

- If the printer and wireless router are connected or the printer and computer are connected by USB cable but you cannot print:

  ➡ Change to Offline (Windows)/Cannot Communicate (Windows)

- In other cases than above:

  ➡ Cannot Find Printer on Network/Cannot Print

  ➡ Cannot Connect to Printer through Wireless Direct

Q Cannot Find Printer on Network/Cannot Print

A

Printing Out Network Settings Information

Follow the procedure below to print out the network settings information.

Step 1 Check that printer and wireless router are turned on.

Turn the wireless router back on.

Wait about five minutes and then turn the printer back on.

Step 2 Check your devices (e.g. computer/smartphone/tablet) are connected to Internet.

Make sure that devices and the wireless router are connected to via Wi-Fi, and that the Internet can be used without problems.

Step 3 Make sure the printer's Wi-Fi setting is enabled and the or icon is displayed.

Step 4 Move the printer and device (computer/smartphone/tablet) closer to the wireless router.

Wireless communication quality deteriorates if the printer or devices are too far from the wireless router. Move the printer and device closer to the wireless router.

Step 5 Print the network settings.

Print out the network settings information on your printer.

➡ Printing Network Settings

Checking Printed Network Settings Information:

From the printed network settings information, check the entries in item "2-2".

C-0

It is connected correctly. If, nevertheless, the printer is not found on the network or printing is not possible, check the following items.

Note

- If codes other than "C-0" are displayed at the same time in the item "2-2" see also the correspondence of the other codes.

Check 1 Check that security software's firewall is off.

A message may appear warning you that Canon software is attempting to access the network. If this warning message appears, set the security software to always allow access.

Quit the security software and make sure that the printer is recognized and ready to use. If so, the cause is the firewall setting. Change the firewall settings so that the printer is recognized and ready to use. For details, contact the manufacturer of the security software.

If you are using any programs that switch between network environments, check their settings.

Check 2 Does network name (SSID) of printer match network name (SSID) setting of wireless router that communicates?

Check the "3-2-6" item in the printed network settings information and the network name (SSID) of the wireless router you want to connect to. If they are not matched, check the SSID and password of the wireless router you want to connect to, and then setup manually.

Check 3 Is privacy separator, SSID separator, or Network separation function enabled on wireless router?

If it is enabled, disable these functions before performing the setup. To check the functions of the wireless router, refer to the instruction manual provided with it or contact its manufacturer.

Check 4 Are MP Drivers (Printer Driver) installed? (Windows)

If you are using Windows and MP Drivers (Printer Driver) are not installed, install it.

➡ Set Up

C-1

The printer's Wi-Fi setting is disabled. (You can also check if the Wi-Fi icon does not appear on the printer's screen.)

Enable the Wi-Fi setting in the printer's settings screen.

C-3

No IP address is assigned. (You can also check that the item "3-2-12" in the printed network settings information is blank.)

Check the following items.

Check 1 Is printer set to obtain an IP address automatically, or is wireless router requesting manual addressing?

Refer to the wireless router's manual to enable DHCP (auto-acquisition) settings on the wireless router or to set a valid IP address on the printer.

Check 2 When you set printer's IP address manually, correct IP address may not be set.

Check the network name (SSID) and the password of the wireless router you want to connect to, the IP address applicable range, and then enter the appropriate IP address on the printer side. If you are unsure, set the printer's IP address to automatic (DHCP).

C-5

Unable to connect to the specified network. Check the following items.

Check 1 Check power status of printer, network devices (e.g. wireless router), and your PC/smartphone/tablet.

This printer can be connected to a wireless router that supports 2.4 GHz, 5 GHz, or both bands. If the wireless router is set up to use the same SSID for 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz, set up that SSID on the printer so that the printer and wireless router can be connected at either 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz.

Note

- Depending on the wireless router, note that different network name (SSID) is assigned for a bandwidth (2.4 GHz or 5 GHz) or its usage (for PC or game machine), using alphanumeric characters at the end of network name.

Check 2 Password on your wireless router may not match password you entered.

Passwords are case sensitive.

Enter the password correctly.

Check 3 Monitor signal status and move printer and wireless router as necessary.

- Place the printer and wireless router where there are no obstacles between them. Wireless communication between different rooms or floors is generally poor.
- Wireless communication can be impeded by building materials containing metal or concrete. If the printer cannot communicate with the computer over a Wi-Fi due to a wall, place the printer and the computer in the same room.
- After changing the installation location, print out the network settings information again and check the status of the signal. Compare with the value in section "3-2-1" in the printed network settings information to determine the installation location.

Check 4 Check wireless channel number of Wi-Fi you are using on computer.

Make sure that the wireless channel number on the wireless router is included in the wireless channel number you checked. If the wireless channel number set for the wireless router is not included, change the wireless channel number of the wireless router.

Check 5 In case of Wi-Fi connection, check if computer that can be accessed by wireless router is restricted.

The wireless router settings may be limiting the number of devices that can be connected at the same time. Remove or relax the restrictions.

To check the settings of the wireless router, refer to the instruction manual provided with it or contact its manufacturer.

Note

- To check the MAC address or IP address of your computer, see Checking Computer IP Address or MAC Address.

Check 6 If problem occurs only when wireless router is in energy-saving mode, turn off energy-saving mode of wireless router.

If the problem seems to occur suddenly, it may be resolved by updating the wireless router firmware (e.g. update interval of a key, problems of DHCP update interval, etc.). For details, refer to the wireless router's manufacturer.

Check 7 If printer is connected to AirPort Base Station via LAN, make sure you use alphanumeric characters only for network name (SSID). (macOS)

If your network name (SSID) contains characters other than single-byte alphanumeric characters, the connection is not established properly. Change the network name (SSID) to use only single-byte alphanumeric characters.

C-4

No default gateway is set.

When you set the IP address of the printer manually, enter a valid default gateway IP address. If you don't know the default gateway, set the IP address to automatic.

C-7

There may be a problem with the signal.

Check the following items.

Monitor signal status and move printer and wireless router as necessary.

- Place the printer and wireless router where there are no obstacles between them. Wireless communication between different rooms or floors is generally poor.
- Wireless communication can be impeded by building materials containing metal or concrete. If the printer cannot communicate with the computer over a Wi-Fi due to a wall, place the printer and the computer in the same room.
- After changing the installation location, print out the network settings information again and check the status of the signal. Compare with the value in section "3-2-1" in the printed network settings information and place the printer in the location with a higher value.

Note

- In some cases, "C-7" and "C-9" are displayed at the same time. In that case, refer to both items.

C-8

Too many clients are connected.

Wireless Direct does not allow more than 5 devices to be connected.

If you want to connect additional devices to the printer, unplug any devices that are not in use before adding them.

C-9

The noise level is high and does not differ from the signal level due to various devices other than the printer.

- If devices (microwave oven, external hard disk drive, and other USB 3.0 devices) that emit radio waves of the same frequency bandwidth as a wireless router is nearby, it may cause interference. Place the printer and the wireless router as far away from interference sources as possible.
- After you change the location of the printer, check the signal quality. Compare the value of "3-2-2" in the network settings information and place the printer in the location with a higher value.

Note

- In some cases, "C-7" and "C-9" are displayed at the same time. In that case, refer to both items.

C-10

No IP address is assigned by the wireless router.

Check the following items.

Check 1 Password on your wireless router may not match password you entered.

Passwords are case sensitive.

Enter the password correctly.

Check 2 Set up printer again and reconnect to Wi-Fi.

Check 3 Check DHCP of wireless router. If DHCP is off, set it on.

For details, refer to the wireless router's manufacturer.

C-11

The network name (SSID) remains the default value (The network name (SSID) has not been set). Check the network name (SSID) of the wireless router.

Verify the network name (SSID) and password of the wireless router you want to connect to, and then set it up manually.

Note

- Wi-Fi Connection Assistant allows you to diagnose and repair the network status.

  Select the link below to download Wi-Fi Connection Assistant and install it.

  ➡ Checking Printer Connection Status Using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

  Refer to below in regard to starting up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

– **For Windows:**

➡ Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

– **For macOS:**

➡ Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

Cannot Communicate with Printer while It Is in Wireless Direct

Check the following items

Check 1 Check power status of printer and other devices (e.g. computer/smartphone/tablet).

Turn on the printer or devices.

If the power is already turned on, cycle the power.

Check 2 Check settings of your device (e.g. computer/smartphone/tablet).

Make sure Wi-Fi is enabled on your device.

For details, refer to the device's instruction manual.

Check 3 Print out network settings information.

See "Step 1" to "Step 5" in Cannot Find Printer on Network/Cannot Print.

In the printed network settings information, check if the item "2-2" is not "C-8". If this is the case, the number of connected printers is too many.

Wireless Direct does not allow more than 5 devices to be connected.

When you want to connect additional devices, disconnect any devices that are not in use before adding them.

Check 4 Check that printer is selected as connection for various devices (e.g. computer/smartphone/tablet).

Select the network name (SSID) for Wireless Direct specified for the printer as the connection destination for devices.

Check the destination on your device.

For details, refer to your device's instruction manual or visit the manufacturer's website.

To check the network name (SSID) for Wireless Direct specified for the printer, display it using the operation panel of the printer or print out the network settings information of the printer.

- Display on the operation panel of the printer.

  ➡ LAN settings

- Print the network settings.

  ➡ Printing Network Settings

Check 5 Check that Wireless Direct password set for printer is entered correctly.

To check the password specified for the printer, display it using the operation panel of the printer or print out the network settings information.

- Display on the operation panel of the printer.

  ➡ LAN settings

- Print the network settings.

  ➡ Printing Network Settings

Check 6 Check that printer is not placed too far away from device.

If the distance between the printer and the device is too far, wireless communication becomes poor. Place the printer and the device close to each other.

Note

- Wireless Direct is set to disabled when you connect to and use an EAP router. Also, if you set Wireless Direct to enable in this case, the wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) will be disabled.
- When using IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise), enable **Administrator mode** so that the Wireless Direct settings cannot be changed.

Checking Network Information of Printer

- Checking Printer IP Address or MAC Address
- Checking Computer IP Address or MAC Address
- Checking Communication Between the Computer and the Printer or the Computer and the Wireless Router
- Checking Network Setting Information

Checking Printer IP Address or MAC Address

To check the printer's IP Address or MAC address, print out the network settings information.

- Print the network settings.
  - Printing Network Settings

For Windows, you can check the network setting information on the computer screen.

- Canon Wi-Fi Connection Assistant Screen

Note

- Depending on the model, it can be displayed on the operation panel of the printer.

Checking Computer IP Address or MAC Address

To check the IP Address or MAC address of your computer, follow the instructions below.

- **For Windows:**

  1. Select **Command Prompt** from **Start**.
  2. Enter "ipconfig/all" and press **Enter**.

     The IP address and MAC address of your computer appear. If your computer is not connected to a network, the IP address does not appear.

- **For macOS:**

  1. Select **System Settings** from Apple menu, and then click **Network**.
  2. Make sure network interface used by computer is selected.

     Make sure **Wi-Fi** is **Connected** when connecting via **Wi-Fi** or **Ethernet** is **Connected** for Wired LAN connection and click.

3. Click **Details** to check the IP address.

   The IP address of your computer appears. To check the MAC Address, click **Hardware**.

Checking Communication Between the Computer and the printer or the Computer and the Wireless Router.

Perform a ping test to check if communication is taking place.

- **For Windows:**

  1. Select **Command Prompt** from **Start**.

  2. Type "ping XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX" and press **Enter**.

     "XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX" is the IP address of the target device.

     If communication is taking place, a message like the one shown below appears.

     Reply from XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX: bytes=32 time=10ms TTL=255

     If **Request timed out** appears, communication is not taking place.

- **For macOS:**

  1. Start **Terminal** as shown below.

     Select **Computer** from **Go** menu of **Finder**, double-click **Macintosh HD** > **Applications** > **Utilities** > **Terminal**.

  2. Type "ping -c3 XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX" and press **Enter**.

     "XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX" is the IP address of the target device.

     If communication is taking place, a message like the one shown below appears.

     64 bytes from XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX: icmp_seq=0 ttl=64 time=3.394 ms

     64 bytes from XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=1.786 ms

     64 bytes from XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=1.739 ms

     --- XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX ping statistics ---

     3 packets transmitted, 3 packets received, 0% packet loss

     If the following message is displayed, communication is not working properly.

     PING XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX (XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX) : 56 data bytes

     ---XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX ping statistics ---

     3 packets transmitted, 0 packets received, 100% packet loss

Checking Network Setting Information

To check the printer's network settings, print out the network settings information.

- Print the network settings.

  ➡ Printing Network Settings

Note

- Depending on the model, it can be displayed on the operation panel of the printer.

Note

- This web page contains information about several models. Depending on the specifications of the printer you are using, some of the features described (device functions, connection method, operating procedure and etc.) may not apply. For details about the functions of your printer, see Product Specifications.

Printing Network Settings

Use the operation panel to print the printer's current network settings.

Important

- The network settings printout contains important information about your network. Handle it with care.

1. Check that printer is turned on.
2. Load three or more sheets of **A4** or **Letter** sized **Plain Paper**.

   Loading Paper
3. Select **Settings** on **HOME** screen and press **OK** button.
4. Select **LAN settings** and press **OK** button.
5. Select **Print details** and press **OK** button.
6. Select **Yes** and press **OK** button.
7. Check displayed message and press **OK** button.
8. When the confirmation screen for printing passwords appears, select **ON** or **OFF** and press **OK** button.

   The printer starts printing the network setting information.

The following information on the printer's network setting is printed out. (Some setting values are not displayed depending on the printer settings.)

Item Number	Item	Description	Setting
1	Product Information	Product information	-
1-1	Product Name	Product name	XXXXXXXX
1-2	ROM Version	ROM version	XXXXXXXX
1-3	Serial Number	Serial number	XXXXXXXX
1-4	Default Password	Initial administrator password	XXXXXXXX

2	Network Diagnostics	Network diagnostics	-
2-1	Diagnostic Result	Diagnostic result	XXXXXXXX
2-2	Result Codes	Result codes	XXXXXXXX
2-3	Result Code Details	Result code details	See Solve Network Troubles with The Printer's Diagnostic Functions to check details on the diagnostic result and result codes.
3	Wireless LAN	Wireless LAN	Enable/Disable
3-2	Infrastructure	Infrastructure	Enable/Disable
3-2-1	Signal Strength	Signal strength	0 to 100 [%]
3-2-2	Link Quality	Link quality	0 to 100 [%]
3-2-3	Frequency	Frequency	2.4/5 [GHz]
3-2-4	MAC Address	MAC address	XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX
3-2-5	Connection	Connection status	Active/Inactive
3-2-6	SSID	SSID	Wireless LAN network name (SSID)
3-2-7	Channel	Channel	XXX (1 to 13, 36, 40, 44, 48, 52, 56, 60, 64, 100, 104, 108, 112, 116, 120, 124, 128, 132, 136, 140, 149, 153, 157, 161, 165)
3-2-8	Encryption	Encryption method	none/AES
3-2-10	Authentication	Authentication method	none/auto/WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK/ WPA3-SAE/WPA-EAP/WPA2-EAP/ WPA3-EAP
3-2-11	TCP/IPv4	TCP/IPv4	Enable
3-2-12	IP Address	IP address	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
3-2-13	Subnet Mask	Subnet mask	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
3-2-14	Default Gateway	Default gateway	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
3-2-15	TCP/IPv6	TCP/IPv6	Enable/Disable
3-2-16	Link Local Address	Link local address	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
3-2-17	Link Local Prefix Length	Link local prefix length	XXX
3-2-18	Stateless Address1	Stateless address 1	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX

3-2-19	Stateless Prefix Length1	Stateless prefix length 1	XXX
3-2-20	Stateless Address2	Stateless address 2	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
3-2-21	Stateless Prefix Length2	Stateless prefix length 2	XXX
3-2-22	Stateless Address3	Stateless address 3	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
3-2-23	Stateless Prefix Length3	Stateless prefix length 3	XXX
3-2-24	Stateless Address4	Stateless address 4	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
3-2-25	Stateless Prefix Length4	Stateless prefix length 4	XXX
3-2-26	Default Gateway1	Default gateway 1	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
3-2-27	Default Gateway2	Default gateway 2	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
3-2-28	Default Gateway3	Default gateway 3	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
3-2-29	Default Gateway4	Default gateway 4	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
3-2-33	IPsec	IPsec setting	Active/Inactive
3-2-34	Security Protocol	Security method	ESP/ESP & AH/AH/Blank (Not selected)
3-2-35	Wireless LAN DRX	Discontinuous reception (wireless LAN)	Enable/Disable
3-3	Wireless Direct/Access Point Mode	Operation mode for Wireless Direct	Enable/Disable
3-3-1	MAC Address	MAC address	XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX
3-3-2	Connection	Connection status	Active/Inactive
3-3-3	SSID	SSID	Wireless Direct network name (SSID)
3-3-4	Password	Password	Wireless Direct password
3-3-5	Channel	Channel	3,6,36,40
3-3-6	Encryption	Encryption method	AES
3-3-7	Authentication	Authentication method	WPA2-PSK

3-3-8	TCP/IPv4	TCP/IPv4	Enable
3-3-9	IP Address	IP address	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
3-3-10	Subnet Mask	Subnet mask	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
3-3-11	Default Gateway	Default gateway	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
3-3-12	TCP/IPv6	TCP/IPv6	Enable/Disable
3-3-13	Link Local Address	Link local address	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
3-3-14	Link Local Prefix Length	Link local prefix length	XXX
3-3-15	IPsec	IPsec setting	Active/Inactive
3-3-16	Security Protocol	Security method	ESP/ESP & AH/AH/Blank (Not selected)
3-3-17	Wireless LAN DRX	Discontinuous reception (wireless direct)	Disable
3-3-18	Frequency	Wireless Direct frequency	2.4/5 [GHz]
5	Other Settings	Other settings	-
5-1	Printer Name	Printer name	Printer name
5-2	Wireless Direct DevName	Device name for wireless direct	Device name for wireless direct
5-4	WSD Printing	WSD printing setting	Enable/Disable
5-5	WSD Timeout	Timeout	1/5/10/15/20 [min]
5-6	LPD Printing	LPD printing setting	Enable/Disable
5-7	RAW Printing	RAW printing setting	Enable/Disable
5-9	Bonjour	Bonjour setting	Enable/Disable
5-10	Bonjour Service Name	Bonjour service name	Bonjour service name
5-11	LLMNR	LLMNR setting	Enable/Disable
5-12	SNMP	SNMP setting	Enable/Disable
5-14	DNS Server	Obtain DNS server address automatically	Auto/Manual
5-15	Primary Server	Primary server address	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
5-16	Secondary Server	Secondary server address	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
5-17	Proxy Server	Proxy server setting	Enable/Disable
5-18	Proxy Address	Proxy address	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

5-19	Proxy Port	Proxy port specification	1 to 65535
5-20	Cert. Fingerprt(SHA-1)	Certificate fingerprint(SHA-1)	xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx
5-21	Cert. Fingerprt(SHA-256)	Certificate fingerprint(SHA-256)	xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx
7	Web Services	Web Services	-
7-1	Unsent Usage Logs	Number of unsent usage logs	0 to 200
7-2	Usage Log Last Sent	Last date when usage log was sent	XXXXXXXX
7-3	Web Service Status	Registration status	Not set/Disabled/Registration pending/Registered
7-4	Log Transmission Status	Transmission result	Not activated/Processing/Server error/Connection error/Timeout error/Error/Awaiting server response/Active
7-5	Subscription Information	Subscription information	
7-5-1	Subscription Status	Subscription status	Not Available/Active/Inactive
7-5-2	Remaining Offline Prints	Number of remaining pages that can be printed offline	xxx
7-5-3	Installed Cartridge Type	Cartridge type for subscription	Subscription/Setup/Normal
7-5-4	Online Support	Online support for subscription URL	xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx (54 characters)

("XX" represents alphanumeric characters.)

Restoring Printer's LAN Settings to Defaults

Important

- Initialization erases all network settings on the printer, making printing/scanning/faxing operation from a computer over a network impossible. To use the printer over a network again after restoring it to the factory defaults, refer to Setup Guide and redo setup.
- If **User management settings** is enabled or **LCD, Remote UI, and other tools** is set as the scope for **Administrator password settings**, the administrator password must be entered.

Initialize the network setting using the printer's operation panel.

➡ Reset settings

Note

- This web page contains information about several models. Depending on the specifications of the printer you are using, some of the features described (device functions, connection method, operating procedure and etc.) may not apply. For details about the functions of your printer, see Product Specifications.

Default Network Settings

LAN Connection Defaults

Item	Default
Network name(SSID)	BJNPSETUP
Wi-Fi security	Disable
IP address (**IPv4**)	**Auto setup**
IP address (**IPv6**)	Auto setup
Set printer name*	XXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Enable/disable IPv6	**Enable**
Enable/disable WSD	**Enable**
Timeout setting (WSD)	**15 min.**
Enable/disable Bonjour	**Enable**
Bonjour service name*	Canon ModelName
LPD settings	**Enable**
RAW settings	**Enable**
LLMNR settings	**Enable**
Wi-Fi DRX setting	**Enable**

("XX" represents alphanumeric characters.)

* Default value depends on printer. Depending on the model, use operation panel to check value of the printer.

➡ LAN settings

Wireless Direct Defaults

Item	Default
Network name(SSID)	DIRECT-abXX-ModelName *1 *2

Password	YYYYYYYYYY *3
Wi-Fi security	**WPA2-PSK (AES)**
Confirm connection request	Displayed
2.4GHz/5GHz switch	2.4GHz

*1 Default value depends on printer. Depending on the model, use operation panel to check value of the printer.

*2 "ab" is specified at random and "XX" represents last two digits of printer's MAC address. (The value is specified when the printer is turned on for the first time.)

*3 The password is specified automatically when the printer is turned on for the first time.

Connecting with Wireless Direct

You can connect devices (e.g. computer, smartphone, or tablet) to the printer by two methods below.

- Wireless connection (connecting devices via a wireless router)
- Direct wireless connection (connecting devices directly without a wireless router)

This section describes Wireless Direct, which allows you to print by connecting the devices to the printer directly.

Important

- You can connect up to 5 devices to the printer at the same time with Wireless Direct.
- Check the usage restrictions and connect the printer to the Wireless Direct.

  ➡ Restrictions
- Some printers support IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise). If you enable Wireless Direct while IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise) is enabled, IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise) is disabled.

  When IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise) is enabled, enable **Administrator mode** so that the Wireless Direct settings cannot be changed.

Connecting a smartphone/tablet/computer to the printer

1. Enable Wi-Fi function on smartphone/tablet/computer.

   Enable Wi-Fi in the Settings menu on your smartphone/tablet/computer.

   For instructions on enabling the Wi-Fi function, refer to the instruction manual for your smartphone/tablet/computer.

2. Select **Settings** on **HOME** screen and press **OK** button.

3. Select **LAN settings** and press **OK** button.

4. Select **Wireless Direct** and press **OK** button.

5. Select **Connect to smartphone** and press **OK** button.

6. Select **iPhone/iPad** to connect with an iPhone/iPad, **Android device** to connect with an Android device, and **Others** to connect with other device.

- **iPhone/iPad**

  1. Select **QR code** and press **OK** button.
  2. Scan the displayed QR code with the iPhone/iPad standard camera app or smartphone/tablet app .

     The iPhone/iPad is connected to the printer.

  Note

  - If the QR code cannot be read, press **Back** button in the screen displayed QR code and connect the printer from **Connect to smartphone** > **Others**.

- **Android device**

  1. Select **QR code** and press **OK** button.
  2. Scan the displayed QR code with the Android device in one of the following ways.
     - Select network and Wi-Fi on the setting of Android device. Select **Scan QR Codes** icon to the right of the **Add network** at the bottom of the list of Wi-Fi connections and scan the QR code.
     - Scan the displayed QR code with the Android standard camera app or smartphone/tablet app .
     - Scan the displayed QR code with a QR code reading app.

     The Android device is connected to the printer.

  Note

  - Wireless Direct using QR code can be used with Android 5.0 or later.
  - It is available in Android 10 or later to scan QR code from setting and read QR code with the Android standard camera.
  - Depending on the smartphone/tablet, QR code may not be readable.
  - If the QR code cannot be read, press **Back** button in the screen displayed QR code and connect the printer from **Connect to smartphone** > **Others**.

- **Others**

  1. Select **Next** and press **OK** button.

     Network name(SSID) and **Password** are displayed.

  Note

  - To show the password, select **ON**. To hide the password, select **OFF** and press **OK** button.
  - The password is required when connecting smartphone/tablet/computer to the printer.

2. Select "DIRECT-XXXX- ModelName" ("X" represents alphanumeric characters) on your smartphone/tablet/computer.
3. Enter **Password** on smartphone/tablet/computer.

   The smartphone/tablet/computer is connected to the printer.

   Note

   - If the printer is set to display a confirmation screen in **Confirm connection request** of Changing Wireless Direct Setting, when the wireless direct compatible device connects to the printer, a confirmation screen asking for permission to connect is displayed on the printer operation panel.

     Make sure the name on the operation panel is the same as that of your wireless communication device and select **Yes**.

You can print from your smartphone or tablet by installing the App. Download it from App Store and Google Play.

- For iOS device
- For Android device

Changing Wireless Direct Setting

Change the settings for the Wireless Direct following the procedure below.

1. Check that printer is turned on.
2. Select **Settings** on **HOME** screen and press **OK** button.
3. Select **LAN settings** and press **OK** button.
4. Select **Wireless Direct** and press **OK** button.

   Note

   - To change the Wireless Direct settings, you need to enable Wireless Direct in advance.

     Select **Advanced mode** on the menu screen displayed when selecting **Wireless Direct** and enable Wireless Direct.

5. Select a setting item.

   Press ▲▼ button and scroll down if necessary.

   - **Show setting info**

     The setting values for using the printer with Wireless Direct are displayed.

- **Change network name (SSID)**

  Change the identifier (SSID) for Wireless Direct.

  The identifier (SSID) is the printer's name (device name) displayed on a Wireless Direct compatible device.

  Follow the procedure below to change the identifier (SSID).

  - To set manually
    1. Select **Change manually** and press **OK** button.
    2. Select **Next** and press **OK** button.
    3. Change using the keyboard that appears.
    4. When you have finished making changes, select **OK** and press **OK** button.
  - To set automatically
    1. Select **Auto update** and press **OK** button.
    2. Select **Yes** and press **OK** button.

       You can check the updated setting.

    Note

    - To show the password, select **ON**. To hide the password, select **OFF** and press **OK** button.

- **Change password**

  Change the password for Wireless Direct.

  - To set manually
    1. Select **Change manually** and press **OK** button.
    2. Select **Next** and press **OK** button.
    3. Enter the new password (10 characters).

       Change using the keyboard that appears.
    4. When you have finished making changes, select **OK** and press **OK** button.
  - To set automatically
    1. Select **Auto update** and press **OK** button.
    2. Select **Yes** and press **OK** button.

       You can check the updated setting.

    Note

    - To show the password, select **ON**. To hide the password, select **OFF** and press **OK** button.

- **Confirm connection request**

  Change the confirmation screen setting when a Wireless Direct compatible device is connecting to the printer.

If you want the printer to display the screen to inform you a Wireless Direct compatible device is connecting to the printer, select **ON**.

Important

- To prevent an unauthorized access, we recommend you should select the setting to display the confirmation screen.

- **2.4GHz/5GHz switch**

  Change the frequency used for Wireless Direct.

  When using Wireless Direct (2.4 GHz), there may be a disconnection if there is a Bluetooth speaker nearby. If the printer supports 5 GHz, switching to 5 GHz will reduce the trouble.

Note

- If you change the Wireless Direct setting of the printer, also change the wireless router setting of the device.

Cannot Print (Scan) from Smartphone/Tablet

If you cannot Print (Scan) from your smartphone/tablet, it is possible that your smartphone/tablet cannot communicate with the printer.

Check the cause of your problem according to the connection method.

- Cannot Communicate with Printer via Wi-Fi
- Cannot Connect to Printer through Wireless Direct

Note

- For problems on printing with other connection methods or more on performing settings of each connection method:
  - Using Cloud Service
  - Printing from iOS Device (AirPrint)

Q Cannot Communicate with Printer via Wi-Fi

A

If your smartphone/tablet cannot communicate with the printer, check the following.

Check 1 Check power status of printer, network devices (e.g. wireless router), and your smartphone/tablet.

- Turn on the printer or devices.
- If the power is already turned on, cycle the power.
- It may be necessary to resolve wireless router problems (e.g. update interval of a key, problems of DHCP update interval, energy saving mode) or to update the wireless router firmware.

For details, contact the manufacturer of your wireless router.

Check 2 Check settings of your smartphone/tablet.

Make sure Wi-Fi is enabled on your device.

For details, refer to your device's instruction manual.

Check 3 Is printer connected to wireless router?

- Check the icon on the lower left of the touch screen to check the connection status between the printer and wireless router.

  If the icon is not displayed, Wi-Fi is disabled. Turn on wireless communication on the printer.
- Make sure the network settings of the printer (e.g. network name (SSID) or network key (password), etc.) are identical with those of the wireless router.

  To check the settings of the wireless router, refer to the instruction manual provided with it or contact its manufacturer.

To check the current network settings of the printer, print out the network settings information or use the operation panel to display it.

- Display on the LCD of the printer.

  ➡ LAN settings

- Print the network settings.

  ➡ Printing Network Settings

Note

- If you have a computer, Wi-Fi Connection Assistant allows you to diagnose and repair the network status.

  Select the link below to download Wi-Fi Connection Assistant and install it.

  ➡ Checking Printer Connection Status Using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

  Refer to below in regard to starting up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

  - For Windows:

    ➡ Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

  - For macOS:

    ➡ Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

Check 4 Are network settings of your smartphone/tablet identical with those of wireless router?

Make sure the network settings of the printer (e.g. network name (SSID) or network key (password), etc.) are identical with those of the wireless router.

To check the settings of your smartphone/tablet, refer to the instruction manual provided with it.

If the network settings of your smartphone/tablet are not identical with those of the wireless router, change the network settings of it to match with those of the wireless router.

Check 5 Make sure the printer is not placed too far away from the wireless router.

If the distance between the printer and wireless router is too far, wireless communication becomes poor. Place the printer and wireless router close to each other.

Check 6 There may be a problem with the signal. Monitor signal status and move printer and wireless router as necessary.

Place the printer and wireless router where there are no obstacles between them. Wireless communication between different rooms or floors is generally poor. Wireless communication can be impeded by building materials containing metal or concrete. If the printer cannot communicate with the computer over a Wi-Fi due to a wall, place the printer and the computer in the same room.

In addition, if a device like a microwave oven that emits radio waves of the same frequency bandwidth as a wireless router is nearby, it may cause interference. Place the wireless router as far away from interference sources as possible.

Check the signal strength on the LCD.

➡ LCD and Operation Panel

Note

- If the web page cannot be printed using an Android device, it may be possible to print it by changing Wireless Direct connection.

  ➡ Connecting with Wireless Direct

Cannot Communicate with Printer while It Is in Wireless Direct

If your smartphone/tablet cannot communicate with the printer in the Wireless Direct, check the following.

Check 1 Check power status of printer and device (e.g. smartphone/tablet).

Turn on the printer or devices.

If the power is already turned on, cycle the power.

Check 2 Check if the icon is displayed on the operation panel of the printer.

If it is not displayed, Wireless Direct is disabled. Please turn on the Wireless Direct.

Check 3 Check settings of your smartphone/tablet.

Make sure Wi-Fi is enabled on your device.

For details, refer to your device's instruction manual.

Check 4 Check that printer is selected as connection for devices (e.g. smartphone/tablet).

Select the network name (SSID) for Wireless Direct specified for the printer as the connection destination for devices.

Check the destination on your device.

For details, refer to your device's instruction manual or visit the manufacturer's website.

To check the network name (SSID) for Wireless Direct specified for the printer, print out the network settings information or use the operation panel to display it.

- Display on the LCD of the printer.

  ➡ LAN settings

- Print the network settings.

  ➡ Printing Network Settings

Check 5 Check that Wireless Direct password set for printer is entered correctly.

To check the password specified for the printer, print out the network settings information or use the operation panel to display it.

- Display on the LCD of the printer.

➡ LAN settings

- Print the network settings.

  ➡ Printing Network Settings

Check 6 Check that printer is not placed too far away from device.

If the distance between the printer and the device is too far, wireless communication becomes poor. Place the printer and the device close to each other.

Check 7 Check that 5 devices are already connected.

Wireless Direct does not allow more than 5 devices to be connected.

Note

- Some printers support IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise). Note that when IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise) is set to **Enable**, Wireless Direct is set to **Disable**.

Message Is Displayed

This section describes some of the messages.

If a message is displayed on the printer's LCD, see below.

➡ Message Is Displayed on Printer's LCD

If a message is displayed on the computer, see below.

➡ Error Regarding Automatic 2-sided Printing Is Displayed
➡ Error Regarding Power Cord Being Unplugged Is Displayed (Windows)
➡ Writing Error/Output Error/Communication Error (Windows)
➡ Other Error Messages (Windows)

Message Is Displayed on Printer's LCD

Check the message and take appropriate action.

- **Power was not turned off correctly the last time. Press the button when turning power off.**

  The printer may have been unplugged while the power was still on.

  Select **OK** on the printer's LCD to cancel the error.

  Refer to Turning the Printer On and Off for the correct way to turn the power off.

- **Cannot connect to the server. Please wait a while and try again.**

  The printer cannot connect to the server due to a communication error.

  Select **OK** on the printer's LCD to cancel the error and try again after a while.

Error Regarding Automatic 2-sided Printing Is Displayed

See Automatic 2-sided Printing Problems and take the appropriate action.

Error Regarding Power Cord Being Unplugged Is Displayed (Windows)

The printer may have been unplugged while it was on.

Check the error message displayed on the computer and click **OK**.

The printer starts printing.

See Turning the Printer On and Off to unplug the printer correctly.

Writing Error/Output Error/Communication Error (Windows)

Check 1 If the **ON** lamp is off, make sure printer is plugged in and turn on.

The **ON** lamp flashes while the printer is initializing. Wait until the **ON** lamp stops flashing and remains lit.

Check 2 Make sure printer is properly connected to computer.

If you are using a USB cable, make sure it is securely connected to both the printer and the computer. When the USB cable is securely plugged in, check the following:

- If you are using a relay device such as a USB hub, disconnect it, connect the printer directly to the computer, and retry the printing. If printing starts normally, there is a problem with the relay device. Contact the vendor of the relay device.
- There could also be a problem with the USB cable. Replace the USB cable and retry the printing.

If you use the printer with a network connection, make sure the printer is correctly set up for network use.

Check 3 Make sure MP Drivers are installed correctly.

Refer to Updating the Driver to uninstall unnecessary drivers and install the latest drivers.

Check 4 When printer is connected to your computer with a USB cable, check device status from your computer.

Follow the procedure below to check the device status.

1. Open **Device Manager**

   For Windows 10 or Windows 11:

   Right-click the **Start** menu and select **Device Manager**.

   For other than the above the Windows:

   Select **Control Panel** > **Hardware and Sound** > **Device Manager**.

   Note

   - If the **User Account Control** screen is displayed, select **Yes**.

2. Open **USB Printing Support Properties**.

   Double-click **Universal Serial Bus controllers** and **USB Printing Support**.

   Note

   - If the **USB Printing Support Properties** screen is not displayed, make sure the printer is USB correctly connected to the computer.

     ➡ Check 2 Make sure printer is properly connected to computer.

3. Click **General** tab and check for a device problem.

   If a device error is shown, see Windows Help to resolve it.

Other Error Messages (Windows)

If an error message is displayed somewhere other than printer status monitor, check the following:

- **"Could not spool successfully due to insufficient disk space"**

  Delete any unnecessary files to increase the amount of free space on the disk.

- **"Could not spool successfully due to insufficient memory"**

Close other applications to increase the available memory.

If you still cannot print, restart your computer and retry the printing.

- "**Printer driver could not be found**"

  Refer to Updating the Driver to uninstall unnecessary drivers and install the latest drivers.

- "**Could not print Application name - File name**"

  Try printing again once the current job is complete.

Printing Problems

- Printer Does Not Print
- Printer Does Not Pick Up or Feed the Paper/"No Paper" Error
- Resolving Print Quality Problems
- Change to Offline (Windows)/Cannot Communicate (Windows)/Cannot Print (Windows)
- No Ink Level Appears in Canon IJ Status Monitor (Windows)

Printer Does Not Print

Check 1 Make sure printer is turned on.

Wait until the **HOME** screen appears on the touch screen. After a certain period of time has elapsed, the screen goes to sleep mode. In that case, touch the touch screen.

If not, make sure the printer is securely plugged in and press **ON** button to turn on.

The **ON** lamp flashes while the printer is initializing. Wait until the **ON** lamp stops flashing and remains lit.

Note

- If you are printing large data such as photos or other graphics, printing may take longer to start. The **ON** lamp flashes while the computer is processing data and sending it to the printer. Wait until printing starts.

Check 2 Make sure that the cassette is correctly inserted.

If there is an object under the printer, the cassette cannot be correctly inserted and paper may not be correctly fed.

Make sure there are no objects under the printer and push the cassette flatly into the printer until it stops.

➡ Loading Plain Paper

Check 3 Make sure printer is properly connected to computer.

If you are using a USB cable, make sure it is securely connected to both the printer and the computer. When the USB cable is securely plugged in, check the following:

- If you are using a relay device such as a USB hub, disconnect it, connect the printer directly to the computer, and retry the printing. If printing starts normally, there is a problem with the relay device. Contact the vendor of the relay device.
- There could also be a problem with the USB cable. Replace the USB cable and retry the printing.

If you use the printer with a network connection, make sure the printer is correctly set up for network use.

➡ Cannot Find Printer on Network (Windows/macOS)

Note

- Wi-Fi Connection Assistant allows you to diagnose and repair the network status.

  Select the link below to download Wi-Fi Connection Assistant and install it.

  ➡ Checking Printer Connection Status Using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

  Refer to below in regard to starting up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

  – **For Windows:**

    ➡ Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

- **For macOS:**

  ➡ Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

Check 4 Make sure paper settings match information set for cassette.

If the paper settings do not match the information set for the cassette, an error message appears on the operation panel. Follow the instructions on the operation panel to solve the problem.

Note

- You can select whether the message which prevents misprinting is displayed.
  - To change the message view setting when printing using the printer's operation panel:

    ➡ Feed settings
  - To change the message view setting when printing using the Printer Driver:

    ➡ Changing the Printer Operation Mode (Windows)
    ➡ Changing the Printer Operation Mode (macOS)

Check 5 If printing from a computer, delete unnecessary print jobs.

- **For Windows:**

  ➡ Deleting the Undesired Print Job

- **For macOS:**

  ➡ Deleting the Undesired Print Job

Check 6 Is your printer's Printer Driver selected when printing?

The printer will not print properly if you are using a printer driver for a different printer.

- **For Windows:**

  Make sure "Canon ModelName" is selected in the **Print** dialog box.

  ### Note

  - If multiple printers are registered to your computer, set your printer as **Let Windows manage my default printer** so that it is selected by default.

    ➡ Default Printer Keeps Changing (Windows)

- **For macOS:**

  Make sure your printer's name is selected in **Printer** in the Print dialog.

  ### Note

  - If multiple printers are registered to your computer, select **Set as Default Printer** from **System Settings** > **Printers & Scanners** for a printer to make the one selected by default.

Check 7 Are you trying to print a large data file? (Windows)

If you are trying to print a large data file, it takes a long time to start printing.

If the printer does not start printing after a certain period of time, select **On** for **Prevention of Print Data Loss** on the **Print Options** dialog box.

For details, refer to Page Setup Tab Description.

Important

- Selecting **On** for **Prevention of Print Data Loss** may reduce print quality.
- After printing is completed, select **Off** for **Prevention of Print Data Loss**.

Check 8 WSD Printer Driver is enabled, you may not be able to print.

Select **Settings** on **HOME** screen > **Device settings** > **LAN settings** > **Advanced** > **WSD setting** in this order, and select **Disable** for **Enable/disable WSD**.

Furthermore reinstall MP Drivers (Printer Driver).

➡ Set Up

Check 9 If printing from your computer, restart the computer.

Restart the computer and try printing again.

Important

- For Windows:

  To restart your computer, choose **Restart** instead of **Shut down**.

Printer Does Not Pick Up or Feed the Paper/"No Paper" Error

Check 1 Check the printer is placed on the right spot.

Place the printer on a flat table or similar platform.

Check 2 Make sure paper is loaded in the specified cassette.

➡ Loading Paper

Check 3 When loading paper, consider the following.

- When loading two or more sheets of paper, align the edges of the sheets before loading the paper.
- When loading two or more sheets of paper, make sure the paper stack does not exceed the paper load limit.

  However, paper may not feed correctly at the maximum capacity, depending on the type of paper or environmental conditions (very high or low temperature and humidity). In such cases, reduce the amount of paper you load at a time to less than half of the paper load limit.
- Always load the paper in portrait orientation, regardless of the printing orientation.
- When you load the paper on the cassette, place the print side facing DOWN and align the right/left/front paper guides with the paper stack.

  ➡ Loading Paper

Check 4 Is paper too thick or curled?

➡ Unsupported Media Types

Check 5 When loading envelopes or Hagaki, consider the following.

- When printing on envelopes, see Loading Envelopes, and prepare the envelopes before printing.

  Once you have prepared the envelopes, load them in portrait orientation. If the envelopes are placed in landscape orientation, they will not feed properly.

Check 6 Make sure media type and paper size settings match with loaded paper.

Check 7 Clean Paper Feed Roller.

➡ Cleaning Paper Feed Rollers

Note

- Cleaning the paper feed roller abrades it, so do this only when necessary.

Check 8 If two or more sheets of paper feed from cassette at once, clean inside of cassette.

➡ Cleaning Cassette Pads

Check 9 Are transport unit attached properly?

See Rear View for the positions of the transport unit.

If the measures above do not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

Resolving Print Quality Problems

If the print results are unsatisfactory due to white or black streaks, misaligned/distorted lines, or uneven colors, check the paper and print quality settings first.

Check 1 Do page size and media type settings match size and type of loaded paper?

If these settings do not match, it is not possible to obtain the proper result.

If you are printing a photograph or an illustration, an incorrect paper type setting may reduce the quality of the printout color.

Also, if you print with an incorrect paper type setting, the printed surface may be scratched.

The method for checking the paper and print quality settings differs depending on your device.

- **Copying from printer:**

  Check the settings using the operation panel of the printer.

  ➡ Setting Items for Copying

- **Printing from your computer**

  Check the settings using the Printer Driver.

  ➡ Basic Printing Setup

- **Printing from your smartphone/tablet using**

  Check the settings on the App.

  ➡ Print Photos from Your Smartphone

Check 2 Make sure appropriate print quality is selected.

Select a print quality suited to the paper and to what you are printing. If you notice blurs or uneven colors, increase the print quality setting and retry the printing.

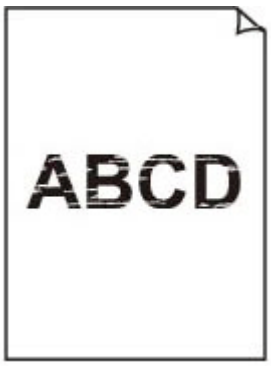
Note

- When printed text or lines are thin, remove the check mark from **Print barcodes and 2D barcodes clearly**.

  ➡ Page Setup Tab Description

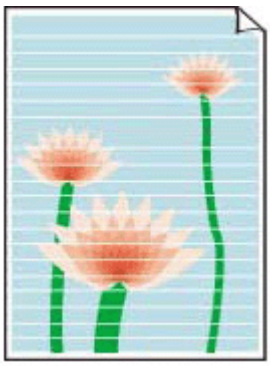
Check 3 If problem is not resolved, click on illustration that corresponds to problem.

[Ink Does Not Come Out]



[Blurry or Fuzzy]

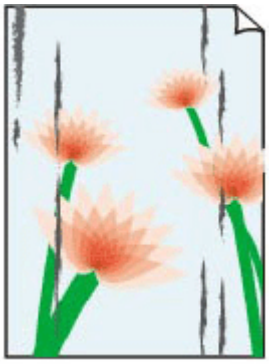
[Inaccurate or Bleeding Colors]



[White Streaks]

[Black Streaks]

[Lines Are Misaligned/Distorted]

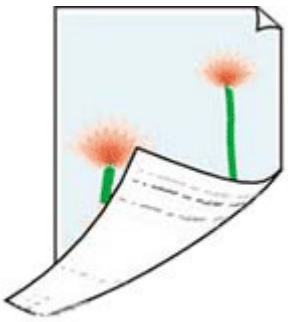


[Paper Is Smudged/ Printed Surface Is Scratched]

[Ink Blots/Paper Curl]

	Tokyo	London
Jan.	12,000	10,500
Feb.	11,500	10,800
Mar.	13,800	12,800
Apr.	12,000	10,500
May.	11,500	10,800
June	13,800	12,800

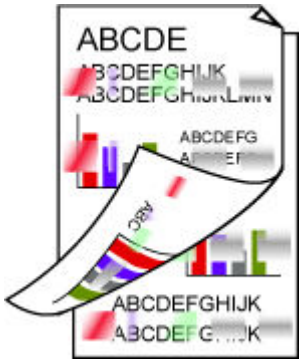
[Lines Incomplete or Missing (Windows)]



[Back of Paper Is Smudged]

[Uneven Colors]

[Streaked Colors]

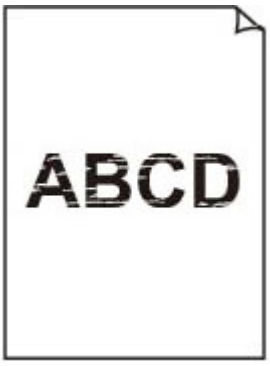


[Paper Is Smudged During Automatic 2-sided Printing]

Printed Barcodes Are Not Recognized

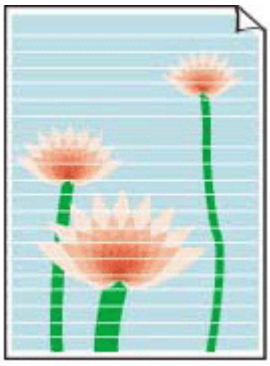
Ink Does Not Come Out/Blurry or Fuzzy/Inaccurate or Bleeding Colors/Streaks

Ink Does Not Come Out



Blurry or Fuzzy

Inaccurate or Bleeding Colors



White Streaks

Black Streaks

Note

- If printouts are blank, black does not print, is faint, or has a blue or red tint, refer to this web page.

Check 1 Check paper and print quality settings.

➡ Resolving Print Quality Problems

Check 2 Check the estimated ink levels in the FINE cartridges. When a FINE cartridge runs out of ink, replace it with new ones.

➡ Replacing a FINE Cartridge

Check 3 Is the FINE cartridge installed properly?

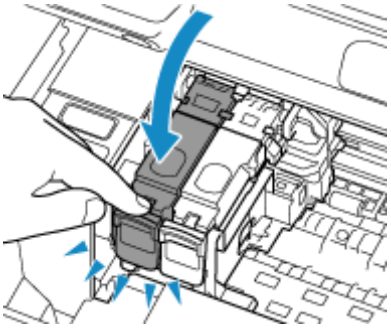
Check that there is no orange tape left on the FINE cartridge.

If the orange tape remains on the FINE cartridge, peel it off.

- If the FINE cartridge is not installed securely, ink may not be ejected correctly.

  Close and reopen the scanning unit / cover to return the FINE cartridge holder to the position for replacing.

- Press firmly the print head locking cover until it clicks into place.



After confirming that the FINE cartridge is installed properly, close the scanning unit / cover

Check 4 Print a nozzle check pattern and clean the print head if necessary

Print the nozzle check pattern by following the steps below to determine whether the ink ejects properly from the print head nozzles.

Step 1 Print a nozzle check pattern.

After printing the nozzle check pattern, examine the pattern.

- **For Windows:**

  ➡ Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern

- **For macOS:**

  ➡ Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern

If the pattern is not printed correctly, go to the next step.

Step 2 Clean the print head.

After cleaning the print head, print the nozzle check pattern and check the result.

- **For Windows:**

  ➡ Cleaning the Print Head

- **For macOS:**

  ➡ Cleaning the Print Head

If it still does not improve, go to the next step.

Step 3 Clean the print head again.

After cleaning the print head again, print the nozzle check pattern and check the result.

If it still does not improve, go to the next step.

Step 4 Clean the print head deeply.

After cleaning the print head, print the nozzle check pattern and check the result.

- **For Windows:**

  ➡ Deep Print Head Cleaning

- **For macOS:**

  ➡ Deep Print Head Cleaning

If it does not improve, turn off the printer, wait for more than 24 hours without unplugging the power supply, and go to the next step.

Step 5 Clean the print head deeply again.

After cleaning the print head, print the nozzle check pattern and check the result.

If it still does not improve, go to the next step.

Step 6 Replace the FINE cartridge.

If problem is not resolved after performing print head deep cleaning twice, the print head may be damaged, or ink may have run out. Replace the FINE cartridge.

➡ Replacing a FINE Cartridge

For details on printing the nozzle check pattern, print head cleaning, and print head deep cleaning, see If Printing Is Faint or Uneven.

Check 5 When using paper with one printable surface, check the correct printable side of the paper.

Printing on the wrong side of such paper may cause unclear prints or prints with reduced quality.

When you load paper, load paper with the printable side facing down.

Refer to the instruction manual supplied with the paper for detailed information on the printable side.

When copying, see also the sections below:

Check 6 Is platen glass dirty?

Clean the platen glass.

➡ Cleaning Platen and Document Cover

Check 7 Is platen glass and/or inner side of document cover dirty?

Clean the platen glass and/or the inner side of the document cover, and then reload the document.

➡ Cleaning Platen and Document Cover

Check 8 Make sure original is properly loaded on platen.

When you load the original on the platen, load it with the side to be copied facing down.

➡ Loading Originals

Check 9 Make sure you are not copying what the printer has printed.

When you copy a printout from the printer as a source document, it may not print cleanly, depending on the original photo or document.

Instead of copying the printout, print the original data directly.

Lines Are Misaligned/Distorted

Note

- For the case of misaligned or distortion, refer to this web page.

Check 1 Check paper and print quality settings.

➡ Resolving Print Quality Problems

Check 2 Perform print head alignment.

If printed lines are misaligned/distorted or print results are otherwise unsatisfactory, adjust the print head position.

➡ Aligning the Print Head

Note

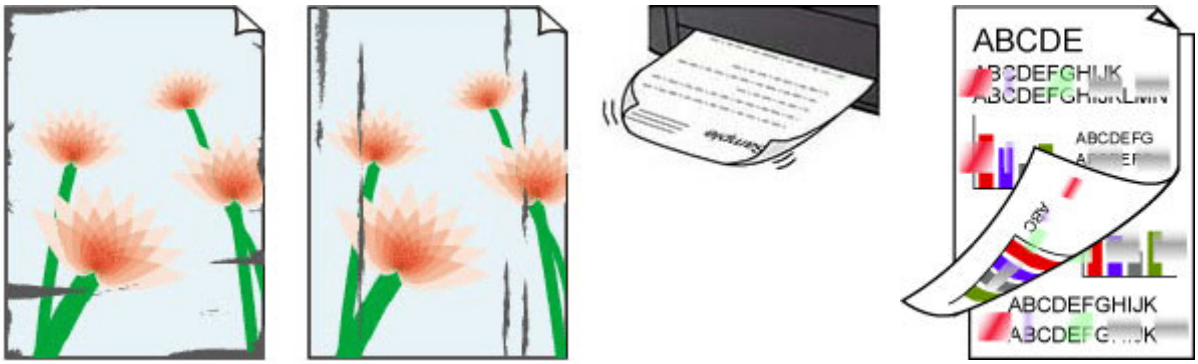
- If the problem is not resolved after performing the print head alignment, perform print head alignment manually.

  ➡ Aligning the Print Head Manually

Check 3 Increase print quality and try printing again.

Increasing the print quality using operation panel of the printer or from computer may improve the print result.

Printed Surface Is Smudged/Scratched/Ink Blots/Paper Curl/Paper Is Smudged During Automatic 2-sided Printing



Check 1 Check paper and print quality settings.

➡ Resolving Print Quality Problems

Check 2 Check paper type.

Make sure you are using the right paper for what you are printing. To print data with high color saturation such as photographs or images with dark colors, we recommend that you use **Photo Paper Plus Glossy II** or other Canon specialty paper.

➡ Supported Media Types

Check 3 Correct curl before loading paper.

When using **Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss**, even if the sheet is curled, load one sheet at a time as it is. Rolling this paper in the opposite direction to flatten it may crack the paper surface and reduce the print quality.

We recommend putting unused paper back into the package and storing it flat.

- **Plain Paper:**

  Turn the paper over and reload it to print on the other side.

- **Other Paper such as envelope or Hagaki:**

  If the paper corners curl more than 0.1 in. / 3 mm (A) in height, the paper may smudge or may not feed properly. Follow the instructions below to correct the paper curl.

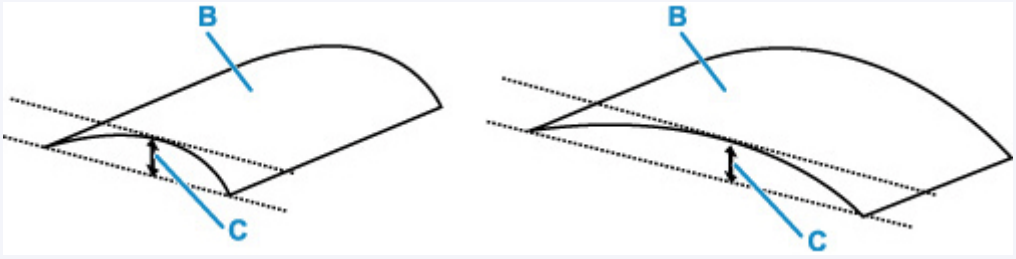
1. Roll up paper in opposite direction to paper curl as shown below.

2. Check that paper is now flat.

   We recommend printing curl-corrected paper one sheet at a time.

Note

- Depending on paper type, the paper may smudge or may not feed properly even if it is not curled inward. Follow the instructions below to curl the paper outward up to 0.1 in. / 3 mm (C) in height before printing. This may improve the print result.



(B) Print side

We recommend feeding paper that has been curled outward one sheet at a time.

Check 4 Adjust the amount of ink.

Depending on paper type, if you touch the printed surface right after printing, the printing may be scratched or ink may adhere to the object you touched. In that case, reduce the amount of ink.

➡ Print settings

Check 5 Set printer to prevent paper abrasion.

Adjusting the setting to prevent paper abrasion will widen the clearance between the print head and the paper. If you notice abrasion even with the media type set correctly to match the paper, set the printer to prevent paper abrasion using the operation panel or the computer.

This may reduce the print speed.

* Once you have finished printing, undo this setting. Otherwise, it will apply to subsequent print jobs.

Select **Settings** on **HOME** screen, and set **Device settings** > **Print settings** > **Prevent paper abrasion** > **ON**.

➡ Changing Settings from Operation Panel

Check 6 For plain paper, set the ink smudge reduction.

Depending on paper type, if you touch the printed surface right after printing, the printing may be scratched or ink may adhere to the object you touched. Check the settings using the operation panel of the printer.

➡ Print settings

Select **Settings** on **HOME** screen, and set **Device settings** > **Print settings** in this order, and select the appropriate setting for **Reduce plain paper ink smudges**.

➡ Changing Settings from Operation Panel

Note

- Printing speed may become slower and image quality may deteriorate.

Check 7 If brightness is set low, increase brightness setting and try printing again.

If you are printing with a low brightness setting on **Plain paper**, the paper may absorb too much ink and become wavy, causing paper abrasion.

- Printing from your computer (Windows)

  Check the brightness setting in the Printer Driver.

  ➡ Adjusting Brightness

Check 8 Is platen glass dirty?

Clean the platen glass.

➡ Cleaning Platen and Document Cover

Check 9 Is paper feed roller dirty?

Clean paper feed roller.

➡ Cleaning Paper Feed Rollers

Note

- Cleaning the paper feed roller abrades it, so do this only when necessary.

Check 10 Is inside of printer dirty?

During 2-sided printing, ink may stain the inside of the printer, smudging the printout.

Perform bottom plate cleaning to clean inside of printer.

➡ Cleaning Inside the Printer (Bottom Plate Cleaning)

Note

- To prevent staining inside the printer, be sure to set the correct paper size.

Check 11 Set longer ink drying time.

This allows the printed surface to dry, preventing smudges and scratches.

- **For Windows:**

  Set the waiting time using Remote UI.

1. Open **Remote UI** on the web browser of your device.

   ➡ Configuration Changes / Display Printer Status Using Web Browser

2. Select **Log in** on Remote UI.

   Note

   - If you specify the administrator password, enter the password.

3. Select **Printer settings**.

4. Select **Ink drying wait time**.

- **For macOS:**

  Set the waiting time using Remote UI.

  ➡ Opening Remote UI for Maintenance

Lines Incomplete or Missing (Windows)

	Tokyo	London
Jan.	12,000	10,500
Feb.	11,500	10,800
Mar.	13,800	12,800
Apr.	12,000	10,500
May.	11,500	10,800
June	13,800	12,800

Check 1 Are you using Page Layout Printing or Binding Margin function?

When the Page Layout Printing or Binding margin function is in use, thin lines may not be printed. Try thickening the lines in the document.

Check 2 Are you trying to print a large data file? (Windows)

If you are trying to print a large data file, printing may not be performed properly due to missing print data.

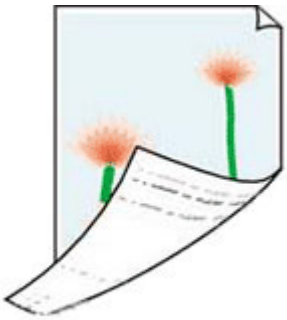
Select **On** for **Prevention of Print Data Loss** on the **Print Options** dialog box of the Printer Driver.

For details, refer to Page Setup Tab Description.

Important

- Selecting **On** for **Prevention of Print Data Loss** may reduce print quality.
- After printing is completed, select **Off** for **Prevention of Print Data Loss**.

Back of Paper Is Smudged



Check 1 Check paper and print quality settings.

➡ Resolving Print Quality Problems

Check 2 Perform bottom plate cleaning to clean inside of printer.

➡ Cleaning Inside the Printer (Bottom Plate Cleaning)

Note

- During 2-sided printing, or too much printing, ink may stain the inside of the printer.

Uneven or Streaked Colors

Check 1 Increase print quality and try printing again.

Increasing the print quality using operation panel of the printer or from computer may improve the print result.

Check 2 Perform print head alignment.

➡ Aligning the Print Head

Note

- If the problem is not resolved after performing the print head alignment, perform print head alignment manually.

  ➡ Aligning the Print Head Manually

Check 3 Make sure you are not copying what the printer has printed.

When you copy a printout from the printer as a source document, it may not print cleanly, depending on the original photo or document.

Instead of copying the printout, print the original data directly.

Change to Offline (Windows)/Cannot Communicate (Windows)/ Cannot Print (Windows)

If the printer cannot communicate with the computer, an error message "Offline" may be displayed when printing. To bring the printer back online, try the following.

1. Check the name of the MP Drivers (Printer Driver).

   Check the names of the printer and MP Drivers (Printer Driver) match. If the offline status is not resolved after selecting the correct MP Drivers (printer driver) name, proceed to the next step.

   Note

   - From Windows 10, the management method of the printer that is normally used has changed. Set the MP Drivers (Printer Driver) of the printer you are using as **default**.

   ➡ Default Printer Keeps Changing (Windows)

   Confirm that the offline mode has been disabled. If the printer is still offline, proceed to the next step.

2. Check the connection (USB/Wi-Fi).

   For USB connection:

   Make sure that the USB Port on the printer and the computer are firmly connected with the USB cable.

   ➡ USB Connection Problems

   For Wi-Fi connections:

   Make sure that icon appears on the printer's LCD.

3. Turn off printer and then turn it on again.

   Confirm that the offline mode has been disabled. If the printer is still offline, proceed to the next step.

4. Check see if Windows protected print mode is enabled

   If Windows protected print mode is switched to enabled, the MP Drivers (Printer Driver) is not be available. Try one of the following methods.

   - **Using the printer with Windows protected print mode is enabled**

     When using Windows 11, Windows protected print mode may be enabled due to security policy in your environment. Contact your system administrator or follow the steps below to connect to the printer.

When the printer is connected via USB, the connection is made automatically when the computer and the printer are connected with the USB cable. The computer downloads the appropriate drivers and is ready to use. To connect a wireless printer, follow the steps below.

1. Open **Set Printers & scanners**.
2. Select **Add Device**.
3. Wait for a nearby printer to appear, then select the printer you want to use and select **Add Device**.
   To remove the printer later, select the printer, then choose **Remove**.
4. If the printer does not appear, see "Fix printer connection and printing problems in Windows" to resolve the problem in the Microsoft's home page.

Note

- When using the printer with Windows protected print mode enabled, the printer functions are limited because the standard printer driver of the OS is used. To use full advantage of the printer functions, disable Windows protected print mode and use the MP Drivers (Printer Driver).

- **Disable Windows protected print mode and install MP Drivers (Printer Driver)**

  If you are using Windows 11 and want to disable Windows Protected Printing Mode, follow the instructions on the below link page. And delete the printer icon, then install the MP Drivers (Printer Driver).

  ➡ Disabling Windows protected print mode

5. Make sure that printer is not set to **Use Printer Offline** mode.

For Windows 11:

1. Open Set Printers & scanners.

2. Click the name of printer you want to configure.

3. Click **Print settings**.

Print settings window opens.

4. Click **Maintenance** sheet.

5. Click **View Printer Status**.

The Canon IJ Status Monitor window is displayed.

6. Click **Display Print Queue** of the Canon IJ Status Monitor window.

The Print Queue window is displayed.

7. Click **Printer** menu in the window displayed.

Make sure **Use Printer Offline** is not selected.

If it is selected, click **Use Printer Offline** to deselect it.

Confirm that the offline mode has been disabled. If the printer is still offline, proceed to the next step.

For Windows 10:

1. Open Set Printers & scanners.
2. Click the name of printer you want to configure, and select **Open queue**.

   The Print Queue window is displayed.
3. Click **Printer** menu in the window displayed.

   Make sure **Use Printer Offline** is not selected.

   If it is selected, click **Use Printer Offline** to deselect it.

Confirm that the offline mode has been disabled. If the printer is still offline, proceed to the next step.

6. For Wi-Fi connections, use Wi-Fi Connection Assistant to change settings.

Diagnose and repair the network connections using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

Download Wi-Fi Connection Assistant from the below page, and install it on your computer.

➡ Checking Printer Connection Status Using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

Refer to below in regard to starting up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

➡ Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

Confirm that the offline mode has been disabled. If the printer is still offline, proceed to the next step.

7. Uninstall MP Drivers (Printer Driver) and reinstall MP Drivers (Printer Driver).

If your MP Drivers (Printer Driver) version is old or not installed correctly, you may not be able to print.

Confirm that the offline mode has been disabled. If the printer is still offline, proceed to the next step.

8. Restart computer.

The computer may be unstable for some reason. Restart the computer and try to print.

Important

- To restart your computer, choose **Restart** instead of **Shut down**.

Mechanical Problems

- Printer Does Not Turn On
- Printer Turns Off Unexpectedly or Repeatedly
- USB Connection Problems
- Switching Printer's Connection to Network or Devices
- Wrong Language Appears in Operation Panel

Printer Does Not Turn On

Check 1 Press **ON** button.

➡ Turning the Printer On and Off

Check 2 Make sure power cord is securely connected to printer, and then turn on again.

Check 3 Unplug printer, leave it for at least 2 minutes, and then plug it back in and turn on again.

If this does not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

Note

- This web page contains information about several models. Depending on the specifications of the printer you are using, some of the features described (device functions, connection method, operating procedure and etc.) may not apply. For details about the functions of your printer, see Product Specifications.

Printer Turns Off Unexpectedly or Repeatedly

If printer is set to turn off automatically after a certain time, disable this setting.

If you have set the printer to turn off automatically after a specified time, the power will shut off by itself once that time has elapsed.

1. Check that printer is turned on.
2. Select **Settings** on **HOME** screen and press **OK** button.
3. Select **Device settings** and press **OK** button.
4. Select **PwrControl settings** and press **OK** button.
5. Check displayed message and press **OK** button.
6. Select **Auto power off settings** and press **OK** button.
7. Select **LAN/USB connection** or **No LAN/USB connection** and press **OK** button.
8. Select **OFF** and press **OK** button.

   Note

   - If Auto power off is set to **OFF**, power consumption will increase.

9. Press **HOME** button.

   The setting to shut off the power automatically is disabled and return to **HOME** screen.

USB Connection Problems

If the printer connected to the computer via USB is not recognized, check the following items.

➡ USB Connection Not Recognized

The following problems may occur even though the USB connection is recognized.

- Printing (scanning) is slow.
- Hi-Speed USB connection does not work.
- A message such as "**This device can perform faster**" appears (Windows).

If the above is the case, check the following.

➡ USB Connection Does Not Work Properly

Note

- If your system environment does not support Hi-Speed USB, the printer operates at the slower speed of Full-Speed or Low-Speed. In this case, the printer works properly but printing (scanning) speed may slow down due to the communication speed.

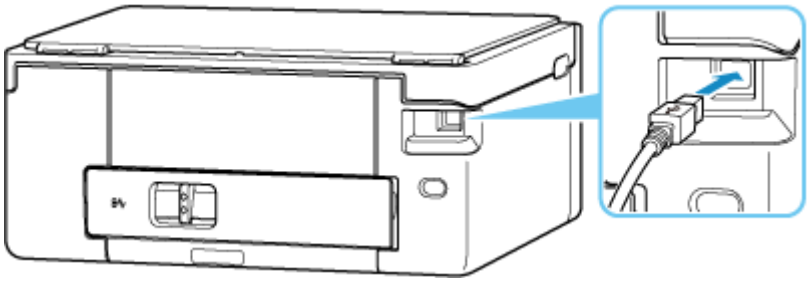
USB Connection Not Recognized

Check 1 Make sure printer is turned on.

➡ Turning the Printer On and Off

Check 2 Unplug the USB cable from the printer and the computer, and then connect it again.

As the illustration below, the USB port is at the back of the printer.



Important

- Check the orientation of the "Type-B" connector and connect to the printer. For details, refer to the instruction manual supplied with the USB cable.

Check 3 Check that **Enable bidirectional support** is selected in **Ports** sheet of **Printer properties** dialog box (Windows).

If not, select it to enable bidirectional support.

➡ Opening Printer Driver's Setup Screen

Check 4 Initialize the printer settings.

Select **Settings** on **HOME** screen > **Device settings** > **Reset settings** > **Reset all**.

➡ Reset settings

After initializing the printer settings, redo setup.

Refer to Setup Guide and redo setup.

USB Connection Does Not Work Properly

Follow the items below to make sure your system environment supports Hi-Speed USB connection.

- The types of USB cables that can be used differ depending on your printer. Check the shape of the USB port of the printer.

  ➡ What Is USB Cable?

- Does the USB port on your computer support Hi-Speed USB connection?
- Does the USB cable or the USB hub support Hi-Speed USB connection?

  Be sure to use a certified Hi-Speed USB cable. We recommend that the USB cable be no longer than 10 feet / 3 meters or so.

- Is the Hi-Speed USB driver working properly on your computer?

  Make sure the latest Hi-Speed USB driver is working properly and install the latest version of the Hi-Speed USB driver for your computer, if necessary.

Important

- For more information, contact the manufacturer of your computer, USB cable, or USB hub.

Wrong Language Appears in Operation Panel

Follow the instructions below to select your language.

1. Press **HOME** button twice.
2. Press ▼ button three times on **HOME** screen and press **OK** button.

   LCD and Operation Panel
3. Press ▼ button one time and press **OK** button.
4. Press ▼ button six times and press **OK** button.
5. Press the ▲▼ button to select the desired language and press **OK** button.
6. Press **OK** button.

   The desired language appears.

Installation and Download Problems

- **Failed to MP Drivers (Printer Driver) Installation (Windows)**
- **Cannot Proceed Beyond Printer Connection Screen (Cannot Find Printer Connected via USB)**
- **Updating MP Drivers (Printer Driver) in Network Environment (Windows)**
- **Disable Function to Send Usage Information of Printer**

Failed to MP Drivers (Printer Driver) Installation (Windows)

If the MP Drivers (Printer Driver) were not installed correctly, make sure that all **Windows Update** have been applied. If all **Windows Update** have not been applied, apply all **Windows Update**.

After confirming **Windows Update**, perform the following operations to install the MP Drivers (Printer Driver).

1. Check see if Windows protected print mode is enabled.

   When using Windows 11, Windows protected print mode may be enabled due to security policy in your environment. Contact your system administrator or refer to "Using the printer with Windows protected print mode is enabled" below.

   - **Using the printer with Windows protected print mode is enabled**

     When the printer is connected via USB, the connection is made automatically when the computer and the printer are connected with the USB cable. The computer downloads the appropriate drivers and is ready to use. To connect a wireless printer, follow the steps below.

     1. Open **Set Printers & scanners**.
     2. Select **Add Device**.
     3. Wait for a nearby printer to appear, then select the printer you want to use and select **Add Device**.
        To remove the printer later, select the printer, then choose **Remove**.
     4. If the printer does not appear, see "Fix printer connection and printing problems in Windows" to resolve the problem in the Microsoft's home page.

     Note

     - When using the printer with Windows protected print mode enabled, the printer functions are limited because the standard printer driver of the OS is used. To use full advantage of the printer functions, disable Windows protected print mode and use the MP Drivers (Printer Driver).

   - **Disable Windows protected print mode**

     Follow the procedure on the following page to disable Windows protected print mode before installing the MP Drivers (Printer Driver).

     ➡ Disabling Windows protected print mode

2. Open screen to uninstall MP Drivers (Printer Driver).

   For Windows 11:

   Open Installed apps.

For Windows 10:

Open Apps & features.

For Windows 8.1 / Windows 7:

Select **Control Panel** > **Programs and Features**.

3. Check if there is "Canon XXX series Driver" you want to install in list.

   "XXX" is the printer's model name.

4. If you find MP Drivers (Printer Driver) for printer you want to install, uninstall it.

   If not found, proceed to the next step.

5. Restart computer.

   After restarting, install the latest MP Drivers (Printer Driver).

Important

- For Windows:

  To restart your computer, choose **Restart** instead of **Shut down**.

Cannot Proceed Beyond Printer Connection Screen (Cannot Find Printer Connected via USB)

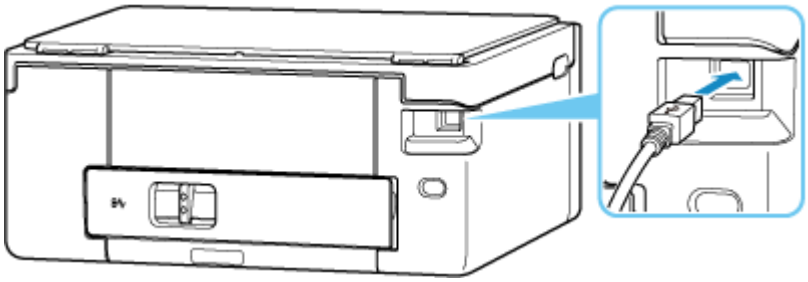
Note

- For the case of connecting with a USB cable, refer to this web page.

If you cannot proceed beyond the **Printer Connection** screen, check the following.

Check 1 Make sure USB cable is securely plugged in to printer and computer.

Connect the printer and the computer using a USB cable as the illustration below. The USB port is located at the back of the printer.



Important

- Check the orientation and angle of the "Type-B" connector when connecting to the printer. For details, refer to the instruction manual supplied with the USB cable.

Check 2 Follow procedure below to connect printer and computer again.

1. Unplug USB cable from printer and computer and connect it again.
2. Make sure no printer operation is in progress and turn off.
3. Turn on printer.

Check 3 Follow the steps below to install MP Drivers (Printer Driver) again.

1. Download the latest MP Drivers (Printer Driver).
2. Turn off printer.
3. Restart computer.

After restarting, install the latest MP Drivers (Printer Driver) downloaded in step 1.

Important

- When installing the MP Drivers (Printer Driver), make sure you select the correct printer name.
- For Windows:

  To restart your computer, choose **Restart** instead of **Shut down**.

Updating MP Drivers (Printer Driver) in Network Environment (Windows)

Download the latest MP Drivers (Printer Driver) in advance.

Download the latest MP Drivers (Printer Driver) for your model on the download page of the Canon website.

After the download is completed, overwrite and install the new version of the MP Drivers (Printer Driver) according to the specified installation procedure.

Note

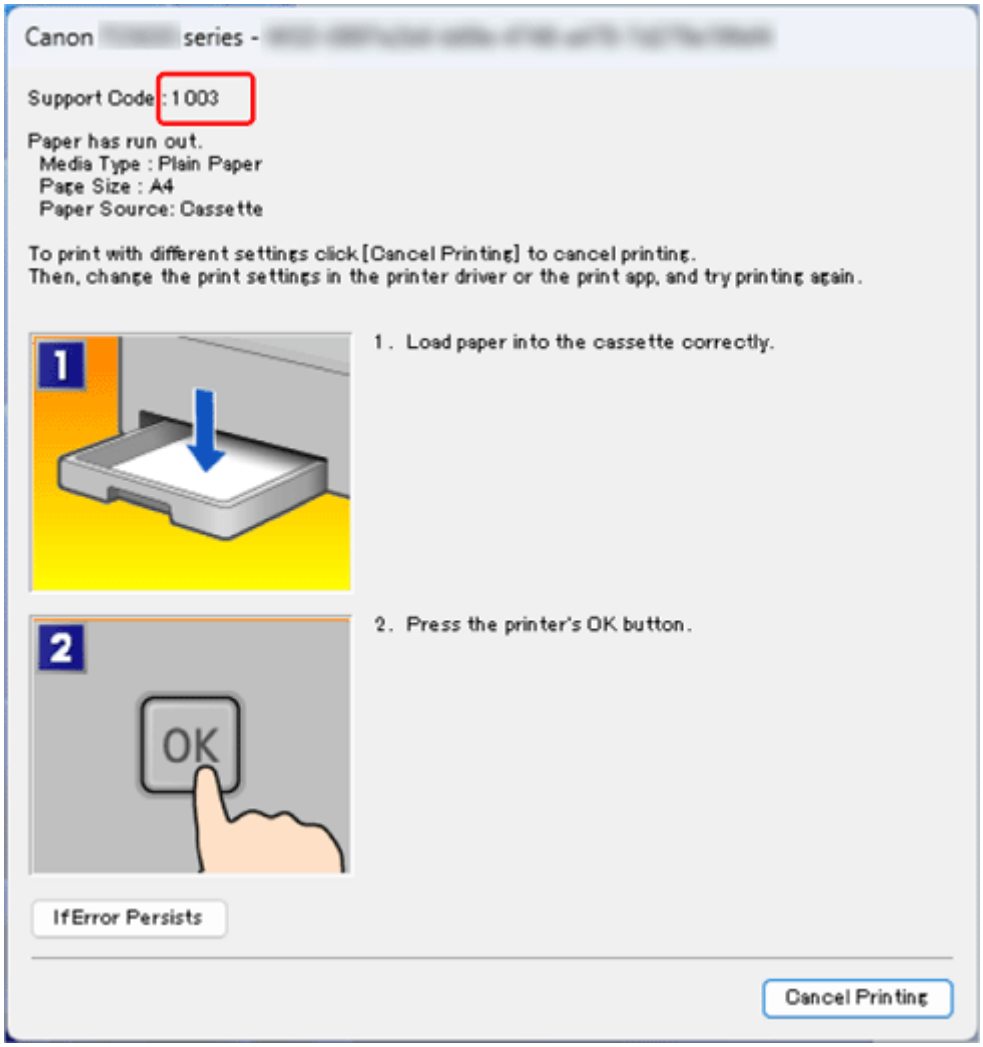
- The network settings on the printer are not affected, so the printer can be used on the network without redoing settings.
- This web page contains information about several models. Depending on the specifications of the printer you are using, some of the features described (device functions, connection method, operating procedure and etc.) may not apply. For details about the functions of your printer, see Product Specifications.

When Error Occurred

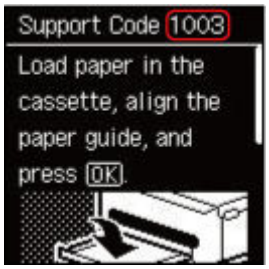
If an error occurs in printing, for example if the paper runs out or jams, a troubleshooting message appears automatically. For some errors, a support code (error number) is also displayed.

Take the appropriate action described in the message.

When a Support Code and a Message are displayed on the Computer Screen (Windows):



Display on the LCD of the printer.



For details on how to resolve errors with Support Codes, see List of Support Codes for Printer Errors.

For details on how to resolve errors without Support Codes, see Message Is Displayed.

List of Support Codes for Printer Errors

Support codes are displayed on the printer's LCD and your computer screen when errors occur.

A "support code" is an error number, and is displayed along with an error message.

When an error occurs, check the support code and take the appropriate action in response.

Support Codes Displayed on Printer's LCD and Computer Screen

- **1000 to 1ZZZ**

1003	1200	1300	1303	1304	1309	1310	1313	1401	1403	1430	1485
15A1	15A2	15B1	1650	1654	1655	1656	1682	1684	1686	1687	1688
169A	169B	1700	1701	1712	1713	1714	1715	1871	1876		

- **2000 to 2ZZZ**

2110	2500	2700

- **3000 to 3ZZZ**

3002	3007	3008	3009	300A	300B	300C	300D	300E	300F	3405	3407
3412	3413	3434	3435	3436	3437	3438	3440	3441	3446	3447	3449
3454	3455	3456									

- **4000 to 4ZZZ**

4103	4104	495A

- **5000 to 5ZZZ**

5011	5012	5050	5100	5200	5205	5206	5207	5400	5B00	5B01	5B12
5B13	5B14	5B15									

- **6000 to 6ZZZ**

6000	6500	6503	6800	6801	6830	6831	6832	6833	6900	6901	6902
6910	6930	6931	6932	6933	6936	6937	6938	6940	6941	6942	6943
6944	6945	6946	6D01								

- **7000 to 7ZZZ**

  7500 7600 7700 7800

- **8000 to 8ZZZ**

  8300

- **A000 to ZZZZ**

  B20B C100 C101

Note

- If no support code is displayed but the paper is not fed or output normally, seeWhat to Do If Paper Is Not Fed/Output Normally.

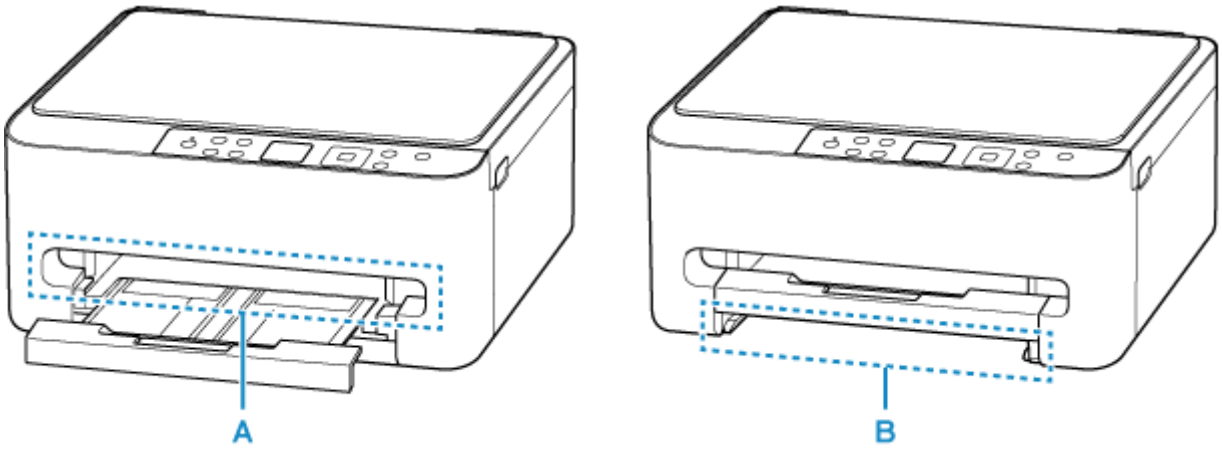
What to Do When Paper Is Jammed

Cause

Paper is jammed.

What to Do

If a paper jam occurs during printing (support code 1300/1303/1304/1313 is displayed), follow the procedure below.



Note

- If the paper is not jammed (no support code displayed) but the paper is not fed or output normally, see What to Do If Paper Is Not Fed/Output Normally.

1. Did you try to print on a small paper size such as **4"x6" 10x15cm** size?

   ➡ What to Do When Small Paper Sizes Are Jammed

2. Check if the jammed paper is visible in the paper output slot (A).

   If the jammed paper is visible, remove the jammed paper by referring to the following pages.

   ➡ Removing the Jammed Paper through Paper Output Slot

3. Retract the paper output tray,

4. Remove the cassette, and then check if the jammed paper is visible in the feed slot (B) of the cassette.

   If the jammed paper is visible, remove the jammed paper by referring to the following pages.

   ➡ Removing Jammed Paper through Feed Slot of Cassette

5. If the jammed paper is not visible in the paper output slot or the feed slot, remove the jammed paper inside printer.

➡ Removing Jammed Paper inside Printer

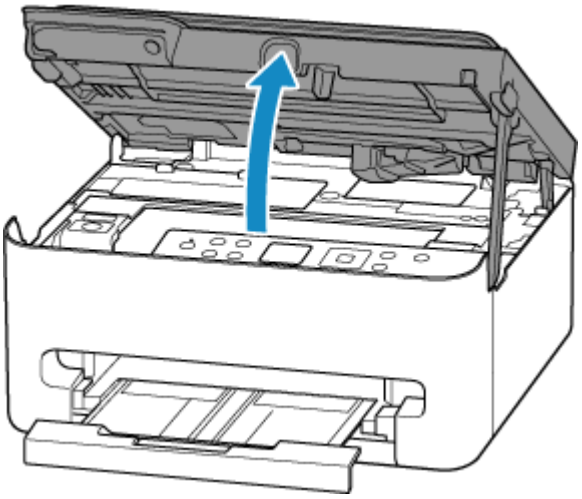
Removing Jammed Paper inside Printer

Cause

Paper is jammed.

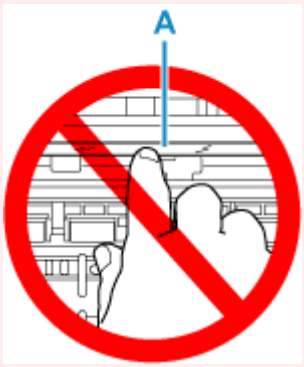
What to Do

1. Press printer's **Stop** button.
2. Turn off printer and unplug it.
3. Open scanning unit / cover.



Important

- Do not touch the clear film (A) and white belt (B).

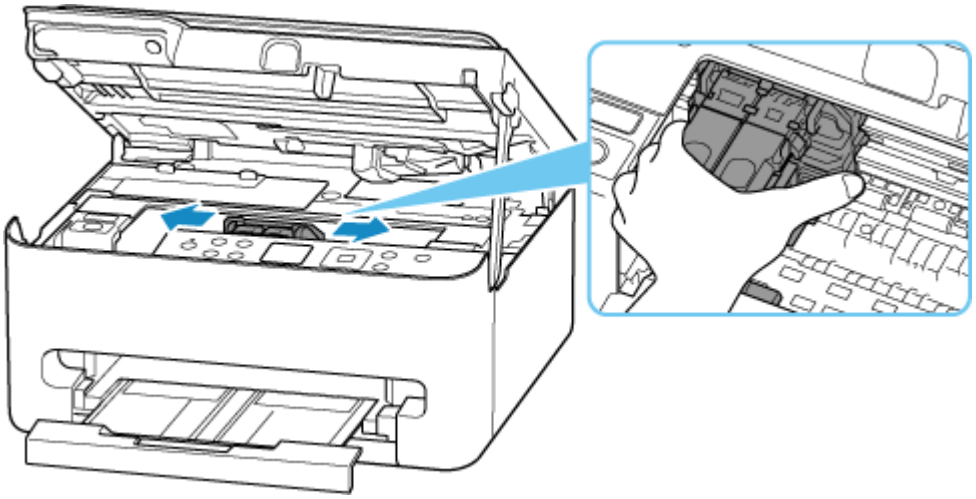


If you soil or scratch this part by touching it with paper or your hand, it could damage the printer.

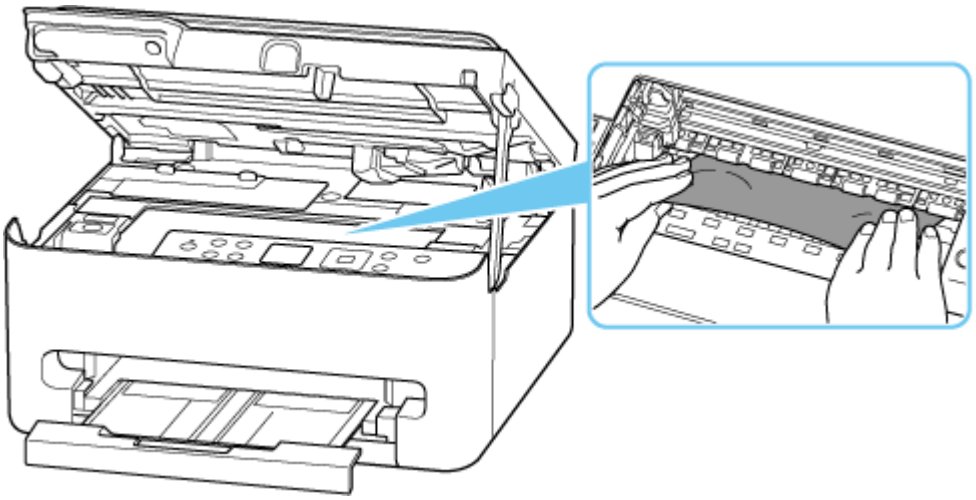
4. Check if jammed paper is under FINE cartridge holder.

If the jammed paper is under the FINE cartridge holder, move the FINE cartridge holder to the far right or left, whichever makes it easier to remove the paper.

When moving the FINE cartridge holder, hold the FINE cartridge holder and slide it slowly to the far right or left.

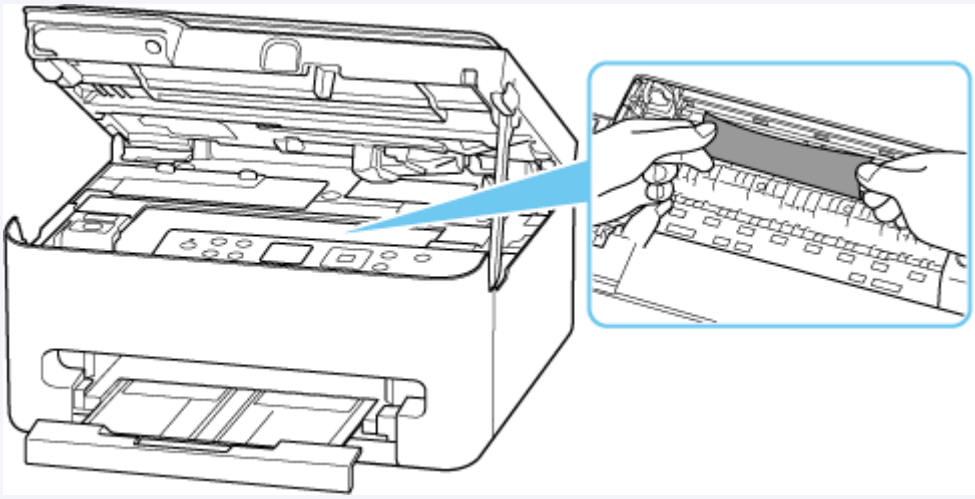


5. Hold jammed paper firmly with both hands.

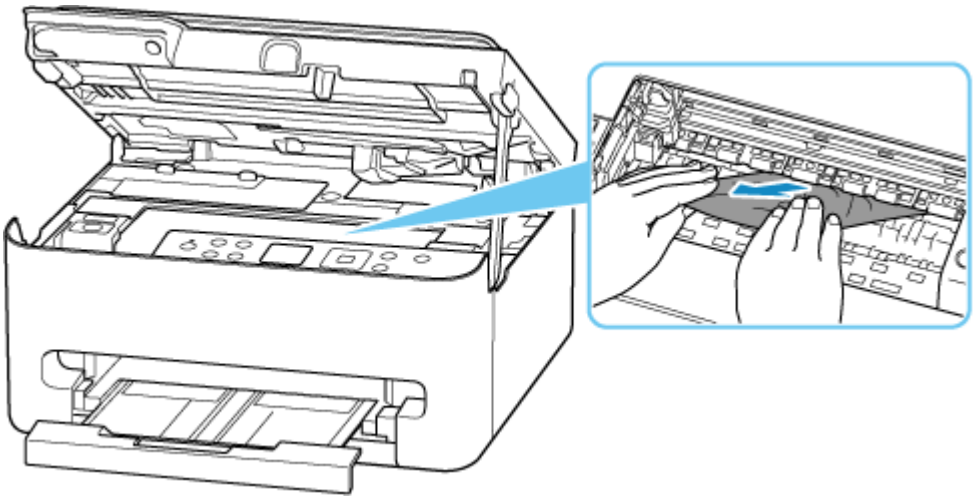


Note

- If the paper is rolled up, pull it out and grasp the edges of the paper.



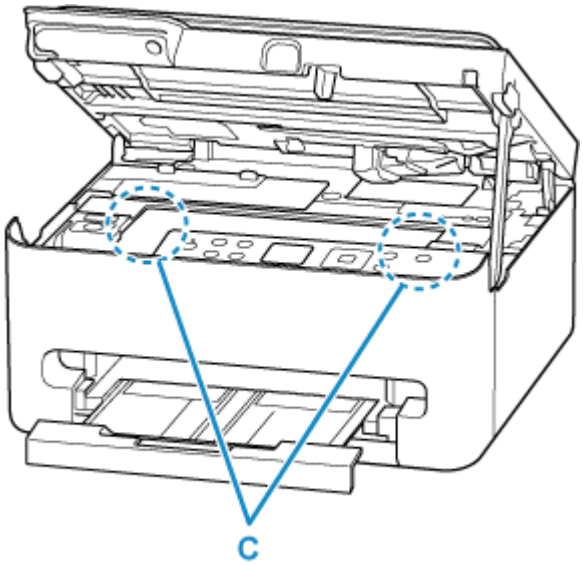
6. Slowly pull out jammed paper so as not to tear it.



7. Make sure all jammed paper is removed.

If the paper tears when you pull out it, a bit of paper may remain in the printer. Check the following and remove any remaining paper.

- Any paper left under the FINE cartridge holder?
- Any small bits of paper left in the printer?
- Any paper left in the left and right empty spaces (C) in the printer?



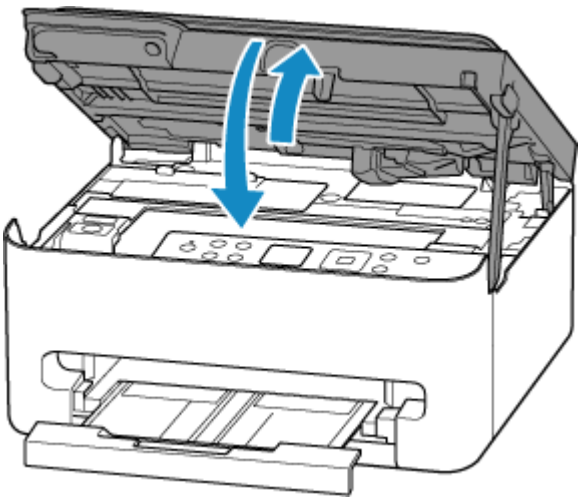
Note

- If you are unable to remove the jammed paper, detach the rear cover and remove the jammed paper from the rear side.

  Removing Jammed Paper from Rear Side

8. Close scanning unit / cover.

To close the scanning unit / cover, lift it up slightly and then lower it gently.



9. Plug printer back in and turn printer back on.

10. Load paper.

    - Loading Plain Paper
    - Loading Photo Paper
    - Loading Envelopes

    Note

    - Make sure you are using suitable paper and loading it correctly.
    - We recommend using paper sizes other than A5 to print documents with photos or graphics. A5 paper may curl and jam as it leaves the printer.

11. Redo printing.

    All jobs in the print queue are canceled. Redo the printing.

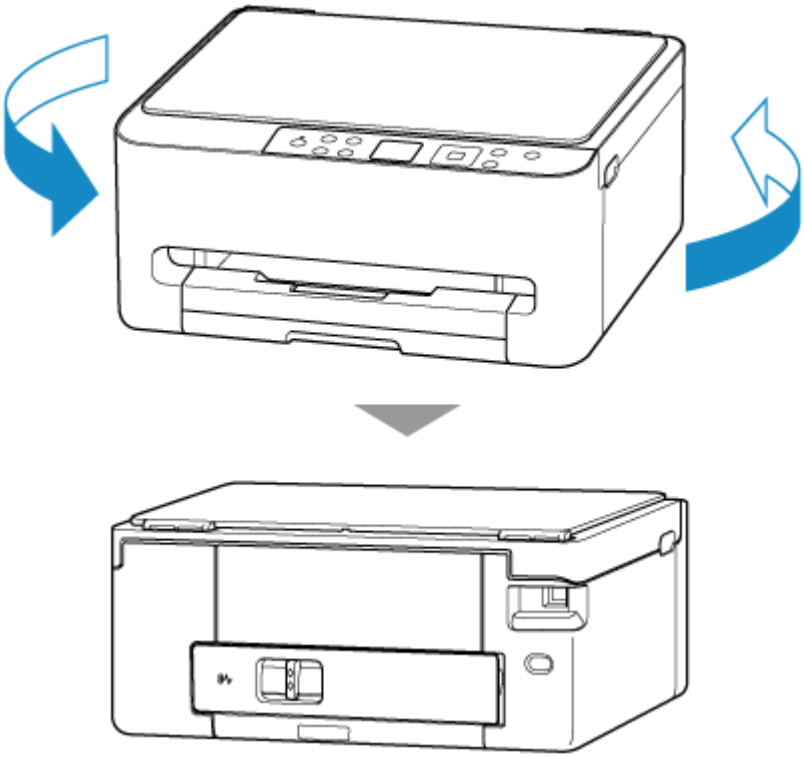
Removing Jammed Paper from Rear Side

Cause

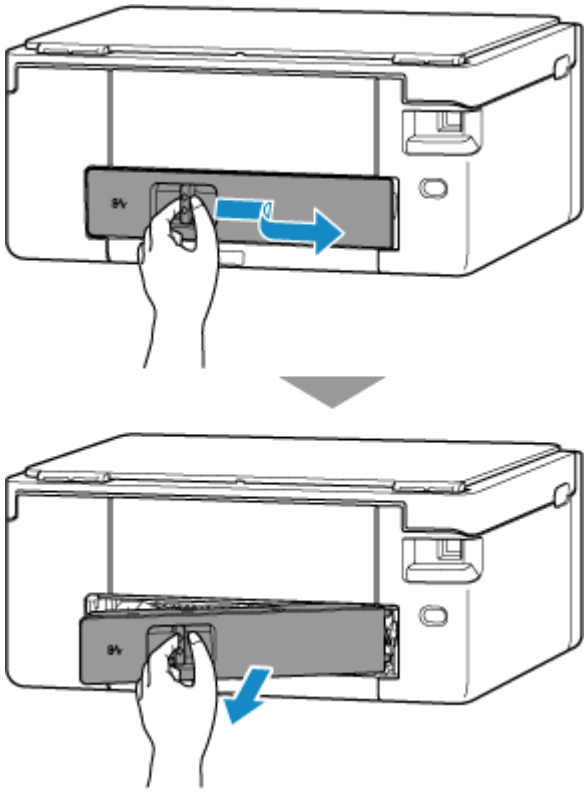
Paper is jammed.

What to Do

1. Press printer's **Stop** button.
2. Turn off printer and unplug it.
3. Retract paper output tray.
4. Turn printer so that rear side of printer faces toward you.



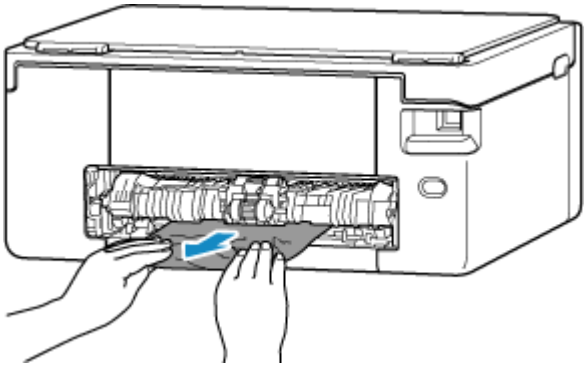
5. Detach rear cover.



6. Hold jammed paper firmly with both hands and pull it out slowly.

   If the paper is rolled up, pull it out and grasp the edges of the paper.

   If you can remove the paper, proceed to step 8.

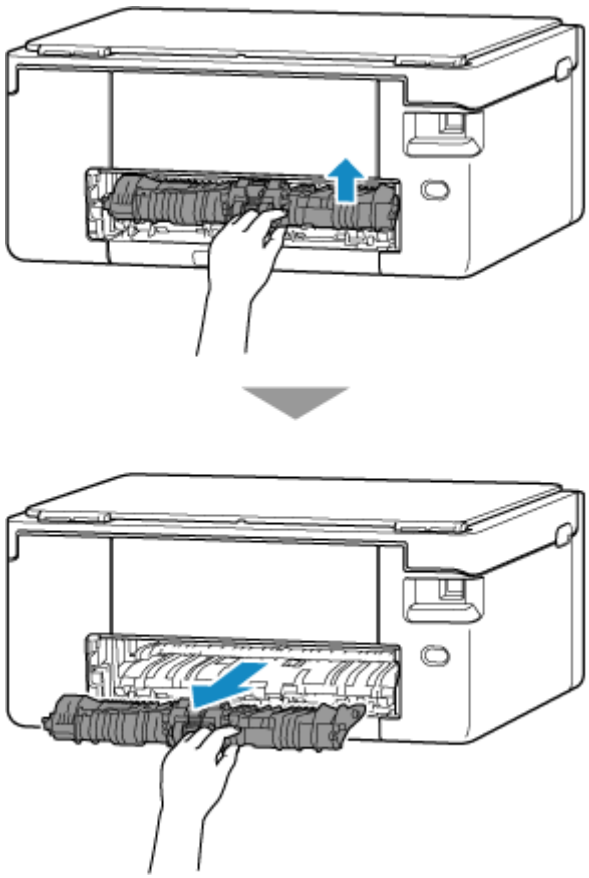


Note

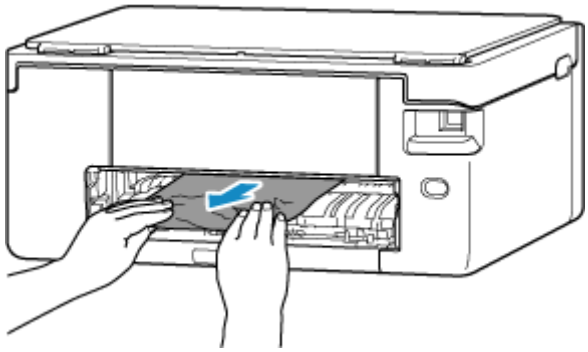
- Do not touch the inner parts of the printer.

7. If jammed paper is not removed, detach transport unit and remove the paper.

   - Lift up the transport unit and pull it out.



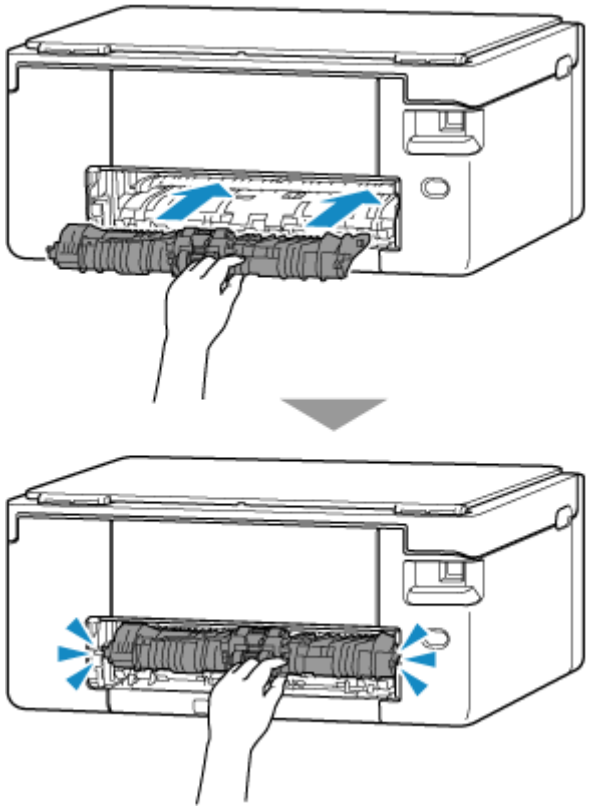
- Slowly pull out jammed paper.



Note

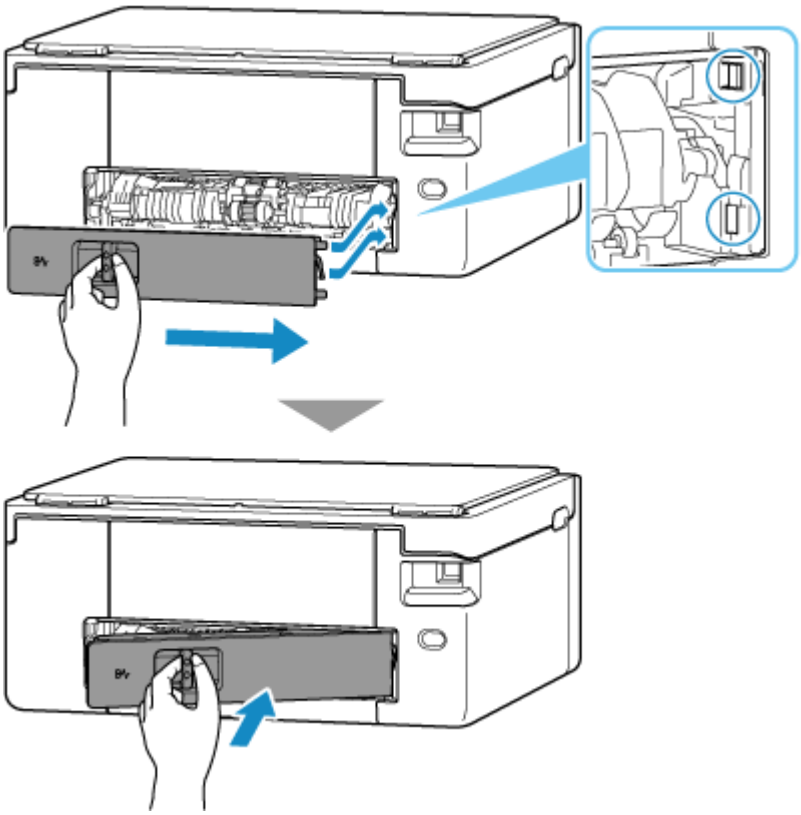
- Do not touch the inner parts of the printer.

- Make sure all jammed paper is removed.
- Insert the transport unit until it reaches the back of the printer.



8. Attach rear cover.

Insert the projections of the right side of the rear cover into the printer, and then push the left side of the rear cover until it is closed completely.



9. Plug printer back in and turn printer back on.

10. Load paper and redo printing.

    All jobs in the print queue are canceled. Redo the printing.

    - Loading Plain Paper
    - Loading Photo Paper
    - Loading Envelopes

    Note

    - Make sure you are using suitable paper and loading it correctly.
    - We recommend using paper sizes other than A5 to print documents with photos or graphics. A5 paper may curl and jam as it leaves the printer.

If the measures above do not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

1003

Cause

Possible causes include the following.

- There is no paper in the cassette.
- Paper is not loaded in the cassette properly.

What to Do

After loading the paper in the cassette correctly, follow the messages displayed on the printer's LCD.

- Loading Plain Paper
- Loading Photo Paper
- Loading Envelopes

Note

- To cancel printing, press the printer's **Stop** button.
- This error may occur if the transport unit is not installed correctly. Refer to the following page to check the transport unit.
  - Removing Jammed Paper from Rear Side

1200

Cause

Scanning unit / cover is open.

What to Do

Close the scanning unit / cover and wait for a while.

Always close the scanning unit / cover after opening it to replace FINE cartridges or for any other reason.

1401

Cause

The 1401 support code signifies that the ink cartridge is not installed.

What to Do

The action you should take to resume operating the printer depends upon which function you intend to use.

1. To PRINT or COPY

Install the ink cartridge in accordance with the procedures set forth in the manual.

➡ Replacing a FINE Cartridge

2. To SCAN

You should take one of the following steps:

- Press the printer's Stop button if you intend to scan by using the operation panel on the printer. You will be able to scan.

OR

- Scan from an external device such as a computer, smartphone, or tablet using the corresponding application software.

1430

Cause

FINE cartridge cannot be recognized.

What to Do

Remove the FINE cartridge and reinstall it.

If the error is not resolved, the FINE cartridge may be damaged. Replace the FINE cartridge with a new one.

➡ Replacing a FINE Cartridge

If this still does not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

1485

Cause

Appropriate ink cartridge is not installed.

What to Do

Printing cannot be executed because the ink cartridge is not compatible with this printer.

Install the appropriate ink cartridge.

If you want to cancel printing, press the printer's **Stop** button.

1650

Cause

The ink cartridge cannot be recognized.

What to Do

Cannot print because the ink cartridge is not installed properly, or a subscription ink cartridge is installed.

Remove the ink cartridge and install the cartridge that came with your printer.

If you want to cancel printing, press the printer's **Stop** button.

1682

Cause

FINE cartridge cannot be recognized.

What to Do

Replace the FINE cartridge.

Replacing a FINE Cartridge

If this does not solve the problem, the printer may be damaged. Contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

1686

Cause

The 1686 support code signifies that the printer has detected an issue with one or more of your ink cartridges.

What to Do

The action you should take to resume operating the printer depends upon which function you intend to use.

1. To PRINT or COPY

You should take one of the following steps:

- For each ink cartridge identified by the printer as having an issue, disable the function that detects the level of ink remaining by pressing the printer's Stop button for at least five (5) seconds and then releasing it.

If, due to individual usage factors, there is some residual amount of ink in the cartridge(s), you will be able to PRINT or COPY until the remaining ink is depleted.

Please note that image quality may be diminished if you PRINT or COPY when there is little ink remaining in the cartridge(s).

OR

- Open the cover, replace each ink cartridge identified by the printer as having an issue, and then close the printer's cover.

Canon recommends the use of new, genuine Canon ink cartridges for optimal image quality.

2. To SCAN

You should take one of the following steps:

- Press the printer's Stop button if you intend to scan by using the operation panel on the printer.

OR

- Scan from an external device such as a computer, smartphone, or tablet using the corresponding application software.

1687

Cause

The appropriate FINE cartridge is not installed, or other FINE cartridge is installed,

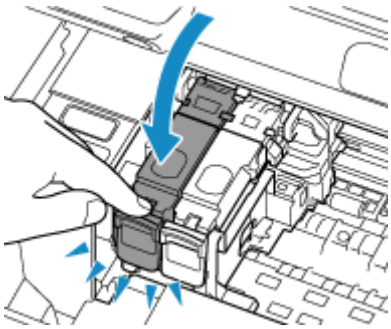
What to Do

Check that the FINE cartridge is compatible with your printer.

Open the scanning unit / cover to open the ink cartridge locking cover, and then remove the FINE cartridges.

Make sure that the FINE cartridges are compatible with this printer and reinstall them.

Press down the ink cartridge locking cover until it clicks into place.



And then, close the scanning unit / cover.

1688

Cause

The 1688 support code signifies that the printer has detected an issue with one or more of your ink cartridges.

What to Do

The action you should take to resume operating the printer depends upon which function you intend to use.

1. To PRINT or COPY

You should take one of the following steps:

- Disable the function that detects the level of ink remaining by pressing the printer's Stop button for at least five (5) seconds and then releasing it.

If, due to individual usage factors, there is some residual amount of ink in the cartridge(s), you will be able to PRINT or COPY until the remaining ink is depleted.

Please note that image quality may be diminished if you PRINT or COPY when there is little ink remaining in the cartridge(s).

OR

- Open the cover, replace each ink cartridge identified by the printer as being empty, and close the cover.

Canon recommends the use of new, genuine Canon ink cartridges for optimal image quality.

2. To SCAN

You should take one of the following steps:

- Press the printer's Stop button if you intend to scan by using the operation panel on the printer. You will be able to scan.

OR

- Scan from an external device such as a computer, smartphone, or tablet using the corresponding application software.

1700

Cause

Ink absorber is almost full.

What to Do

Press the printer's **OK** button to continue printing. Contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

Cassette Is Not Installed (1876)

Cause

Possible causes include the following.

- The cassette is not installed.
- The cassette is not pushed all the way into the printer.

What to Do

After loading the paper in the cassette and installing the cassette in the printer, and then follow the messages displayed on the printer's LCD.

Important

- Align the paper guides of the cassette with both edges of the paper.

  Push the cassette all the way into the printer.

  Load the paper correctly and install the cassette correctly, referring to Loading Plain Paper.

2110

Cause

An incompatible print setting combination has been specified for the paper loaded in the cassette.

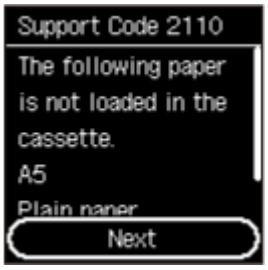
What to Do

To specify the appropriate print settings for the paper loaded in the cassette and retry printing, follow the steps below.

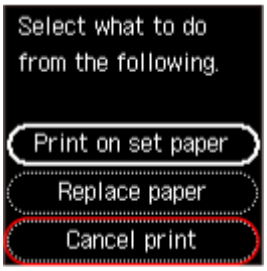
Note

- For other ways to deal with this problem, see the following pages.
  - Load paper specified in print settings (2110)
  - Print without Changing Paper and Print Settings (2110)
- To disable notifications for this error, disable the function to detect paper setting mismatch.
  - Disable Notifications for 2110 Error

1. Press printer's **OK** button.



2. Select **Cancel print** with printer's ▲▼ buttons and press **OK** button.



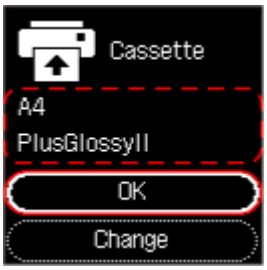
3. Reload paper in cassette.

   - Loading Plain Paper
   - Loading Photo Paper
   - Loading Envelopes

4. Check paper information (paper size and media type).

   The paper information is used in the print settings that you specify when you redo the printing in step 5.

After checking the paper information (paper size and media type), select **OK** with the printer's ▲▼ buttons and press the **OK** button.



5. Redo printing.

Note

- For the proper combination of paper size and media type, see below.
  - ➡ Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Paper Size)
  - ➡ Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Media Type)

4103

Cause

Cannot perform printing with current print settings.

What to Do

Press the printer's **Stop** button to cancel printing.

Change the print settings specified when printing and retry printing.

5100

Cause

Printer error has occurred.

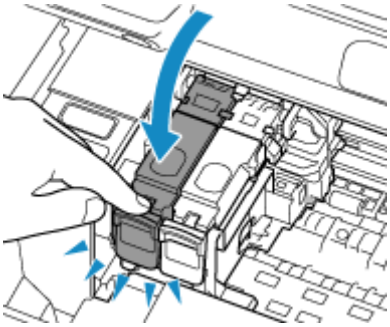
What to Do

Cancel printing and turn off the printer.

Check the following:

- Make sure the FINE cartridges are properly installed.

  Press down the ink cartridge locking cover until it clicks into place.



- Make sure FINE cartridge holder motion is not impeded by protective material, jammed paper, etc.

  Remove any impediment.

Important

- Do not touch the clear film (A) and white belt (B).

If you soil or scratch this part by touching it with paper or your hand, it could damage the printer.

Turn the printer back on.
If this does not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

5200

Cause

Printer error has occurred.

What to Do

Turn off the printer and unplug it.

Plug in the printer again and turn it back on.

If this does not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

5B00

Cause

Printer error has occurred.

What to Do

Turn off the printer and unplug it.

Plug in the printer again and turn it back on.

If this does not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

6000

Cause

Printer error has occurred.

What to Do

Turn off the printer and unplug it.

Plug in the printer again and turn it back on.

If this does not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.